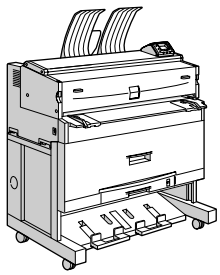
Operating Instructions
Software Guide



1 Preparing for Printing
2 Setting Up the Printer Driver
3 Other Print Operations
4 Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel
5 Printing GL/2 and TIFF Files
6 Monitoring and Configuring the Printer
7 Using a Printer Server
8 Special Operations under Windows
9 Mac OS Configuration
10 Security Measures Provided by this Printer
11 Appendix

Read this manual carefully before you use this machine and keep it handy for future reference. For safe and correct use, be sure to read "Safety Information" before using the machine.

Introduction

This manual contains detailed instructions and notes on the operation and use of this machine. For your safety and benefit, read this manual carefully before using the machine. Keep this manual in a handy place for quick reference.

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

Important

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice. In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT® and Windows Server® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe®, PostScript®, Acrobat®, PageMaker® and Adobe Type Manager are registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, Macintosh, Mac OS and True Type are trademarks of Apple Computer Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Bonjour™ is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc.

Citrix® and MetaFrame® are registered trademarks of Citrix Systems, Inc.

UPnP is a trademark of the UPnP Implementers Corporation.

HP-GL is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Co.

Sun, Sun Microsystems, the Sun logo, Java, the Java Coffee Cup logo, J2SE, and all trademarks and logos based on Java are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

IPS-PRINTTM Printer Language Emulation Copyright© 2000, Oak Technology, Inc., All Rights Reserved.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries, licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

Novell, NetWare are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc.

Netscape and Netscape Navigator are registered trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation.

Ethernet is a registered trademark of Xerox Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- The product name of Windows 98 is Microsoft® Windows® 98.
- The product name of Windows Me is Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition (Windows Me).
- The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:
  Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional
  Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server
  Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server
- The product names of Windows XP are as follows:
  Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional
  Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition
  Microsoft® Windows® Media Center Edition
  Microsoft® Windows® Tablet PC Edition
- The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition
- The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition
  Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition
- The product names of Windows NT 4.0 are as follows:
  Microsoft® Windows NT® Workstation 4.0
  Microsoft® Windows NT® Server 4.0

Notes

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Manuals for This Printer

Refer to each manual as required.

Important

❒ Media differ according to manual.

❒ To view the PDF versions of these manuals, Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader must be installed on your computer.

❒ Depending on which country you are in, HTML versions of these manuals might also be provided. To view these, a Web browser must be installed on your computer.

❖ **Safety Information**

Provides information on safe usage of this machine.
To prevent damage to the machine and avoid injury, be sure to read this.

❖ **Hardware Guide**

Contains information about paper and explains procedures such as installing options, replacing consumables, responding to error messages, and resolving jams.

❖ **Software Guide (This manual)**

Contains procedures for using this machine in a network environment, utilizing the software, and using security functions.

❖ **Security Reference**

This manual is for machine administrators.
The machine's security functions prevent unauthorized use of the machine, data tampering, and information leakage.
For increased security, configure the following settings.

- Using Server Certificates
- Using SSL
- Changing Administrator User Names and Passwords

For details, see "Setting Up the Printer", Security Guide.
Be sure to refer to this manual when configuring the machine's security and authentication settings.

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

The following set of symbols is used in this manual.

⚠ WARNING:

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in serious injury or death. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information".

⚠ CAUTION:

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in moderate or minor injury, or damage to the machine or to property. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information".

Important

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

Reference

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

[ ]

Indicates the names of keys that appear on the machine's display panel.

【 】

Indicates the names of keys on the machine's control panel.

Keys on the computer's keyboard.

Names of Major Options

This section explains the names of the major options described in this manual.

Major options for this machine are referred to as follows:

- Paper Cassette Type 240 → Cut paper tray
- Folder FD6500A → Folding finisher

Model-Specific Information

In this manual, model-specific information is indicated by the following marks:

220-240V

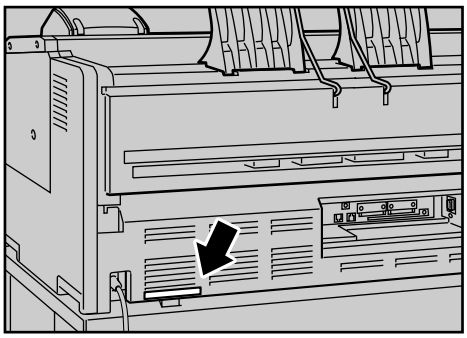
Indicates information that is specific to the 220 to 240 V model.

120V

Indicates information that is specific to the 120 V model printer.

Note

❒ Check the label on the rear of the printer to identify the model.

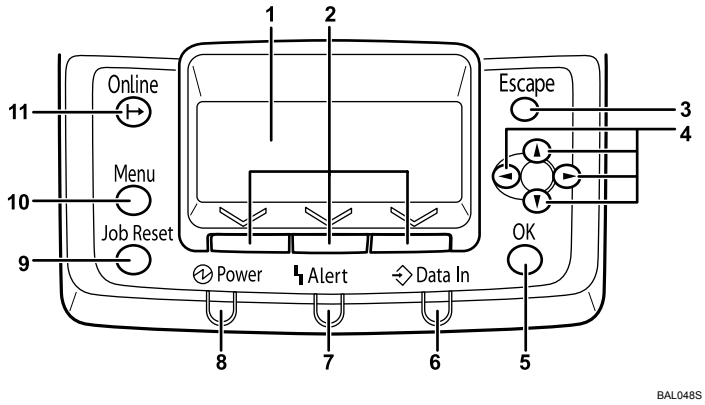


BAL006S

❒ Dimensions in this manual are given in two units of measure: metric and inch. If your printer is the 220 to 240 V model, refer to the metric units. If your printer is the 120 V model, refer to the inch units.

Using Keys

This section explains names and usage of the parts of the control panel.



1. Display

Displays current printer status and error messages.

Entering energy saver mode turns off the back light. For details about energy saver mode, see Software Guide.

2. Selection keys

Correspond to the function items shown on the bottom line of the display.

3. 【Escape】key

Press this key to return to the previous display.

4. Scroll keys

Press to move the cursor in each direction.

When the 【▲】【▼】【►】【◄】keys appears in this manual, press the scroll key of the same direction.

5. 【OK】key

Use this key to confirm settings, or setting values, or move to the next menu level.

6. Data In indicator

Blinks when the printer is receiving data from a computer. The Data In indicator lights up if there is data to be printed.

7. Alert indicator

Lights up when a printer error occurs. Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

8. Power indicator

Remains lit while the power is on. It is unlit when the power is off or while the printer is in energy saver mode.

9. 【Job Reset】key

When the printer is online, press this key to cancel an ongoing print job.

10. 【Menu】key

Press this key to configure and check the current printer settings.

11. 【Online】key

Indicates whether the printer is online or offline. Press this to switch between online and offline status.

When the lamp is lit, the printer is online, enabling data reception from connected computers.

When the lamp is unlit, the printer is offline, disabling data reception from the connected computers.

While configuring settings, press the 【Online】key to return to the initial screen.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Manuals for This Printer i
How to Read This Manual ii
Symbols ii
Names of Major Options ii
Model-Specific Information iii
Using Keys iv

1. Preparing for Printing

Quick Install 1
Confirming the Connection Method 3
Network Connection 3
Using the SmartDeviceMonitor Port 7
Installing DeskTopBinder-SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 7
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver (TCP/IP) 8
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver (IPP) 10
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - TCP/IP) 12
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - IPP) 14
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - TCP/IP) 16
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - IPP) 18
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - TCP/IP) 20
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - IPP) 22
Changing the Port Settings for SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 24
Using the Standard TCP/IP Port 26
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver 26
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 28
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2) 30
Using the LPR Port 32
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver 32
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 34
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2) 35
Using as the Windows Network Printer 37
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver 37
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me) 39
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) 40
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2) 41
Using as the NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer 42
When using the PostScript 3 Printer Driver 44
Form Feed 44
Banner Page 44
Printing after Resetting the Printer 45
Installing the Printer Driver Using USB 46
Windows Me - USB 46
Windows 2000 - USB 48
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2- USB 49

Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM 50
Making Option Settings for the Printer 52
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication 52
If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled 53
Memory Capacity and Paper Size 54

2. Setting Up the Printer Driver

RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties 55
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties 55
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties 57
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties 59
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties 61
PostScript 3 - Setting Up for Printing 63
Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties 63
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties 65
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties 67
Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties 69
Mac OS - Setting Up for Printing 71

3. Other Print Operations

Printing a PDF File Directly 73
Printing Method 73
Using DeskTopBinder Lite 74
Using Commands 78
Using the Print Job Function 79
Print Job Screen 79
Printing from the Print Job Screen 82
Sample Print 82
Locked Print 86
Hold Print 90
Stored Print 93
Printing from the User ID Screen 97
Printing the Selected Print Job 97
Printing All Print Jobs 98
Canceling a Print Job 100
Canceling a Print Job Using the Control Panel 100
Windows - Canceling a Print Job from the computer 101
Mac OS - Canceling a Print Job from the computer 102
Checking the Error Log 103
Collate 105
Spool Printing 107
Setting Spool Printing 108
Viewing or Deleting Spooled Jobs Using Web Image Monitor 108
Printing with the Folding Finisher 109
Fold Types 110
Folding Finisher Cautions 111

4. Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

Menu Chart 113
Paper Input Menu 116
Changing the Paper Input Menu 116
Paper Input Menu Parameters 118
Maintenance Menu 121
Changing the Maintenance Menu 121
Maintenance Menu Parameters 122
List/Test Print Menu 126
Printing a Configuration Page 126
Interpreting the Configuration Page 127
List/Test Print Menu Parameters 129
System Menu 130
Changing the System Menu 130
System Menu Parameters 131
Print Settings Menu 134
Changing the Print Settings Menu 134
Print Settings Menu Parameters 135
Security Options Menu 138
Changing the Security Options Menu 138
Security Options Menu Parameters 139
Host Interface Menu 143
Changing the Host Interface Menu 143
Host Interface Menu Parameters 144
Language Menu 150
Changing the Language Menu 150
Language Menu Parameters 150

5. Printing GL/2 and TIFF Files

Printable Files 151
To Print 152
Using Web Printing Tool 152
Using From HDI Driver 156
Using From the Printing Commands 156
Print Settings for GL/2 & TIFF 159
Adjusting the Print Settings for GL/2 & TIFF 159
General Settings 161
GL/2 Print Settings 163
TIFF/CALS Print Settings 164
Using the HDI Driver for AutoCAD 165
Setup CD-ROM 165
Installing the HDI Driver 167
Displaying and Printing Help 168
Printable GL/2 Files 169
HP-GL Specifications 169
HP-GL/2 Specifications 174
HP-RTL Specifications 178

Printable TIFF Files **179**
TIFF Data Specifications 179
Printable CALS Files **183**
CALS Data Specifications 183

6. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

Using Web Image Monitor **185**
Displaying Top Page 187
When User Authentication is Set 188
About Menu and Mode 189
Access in the Administrator Mode 191
Displaying Web Image Monitor Help 191
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin **193**
Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin 195
Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration 196
Locking the Menus on the Printer's Control Panel 197
Changing the Paper Type 198
Managing User Information 199
Setting Applicable Functions to New Users 202
Configuring the Energy Saver Mode 203
Setting a Password 204
Checking the Printer Status 205
Changing Names and Comments 206
Viewing and Deleting Spool Print Jobs **207**
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client **208**
Monitoring Printers 208
Checking the Printer Status 208
When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 209
Printer Status Notification by E-Mail **210**
Auto E-mail Notification 212
On-demand E-mail Notification 212
Mail authentication 213
Sending On-demand E-mail 214
Remote Maintenance by telnet **217**
Using telnet 217
access 218
autonet 219
bonjour (rendezvous) 220
devicename 221
dhcp 222
diprint 223
dns 224
domainname 226
help 226
hostname 227
ifconfig 228
info 229
ipp 230
ipv6 231

lpr 231
netware 232
passwd 233
pathmtu 234
prnlog 234
route 235
set 237
show 239
slp 239
smb 240
snmp 241
sntp 244
spoolsw 245
ssdp 245
ssh 246
status 247
syslog 247
upnp 247
web 248
wiconfig 249
wins 252
SNMP 253
Getting Printer Information over the Network 254
Printer configuration 257
Understanding the Displayed Information 258
Print Job Information 258
Print Log Information 259
Configuring the Network Interface Board 260
Message List 267
System Log Information 267

7. Using a Printer Server

Preparing Printer Server 275
Printing notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 276
Using NetWare 278
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x) 280
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5) 282
Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment 284
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x) 286
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5) 288

8. Special Operations under Windows

Printing Files Directly from Windows 291
Setup 291
Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address 292
Printing Commands 294

9. Mac OS Configuration

Mac OS **297**
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver and PPD File 297
Setting Up PPD Files 298
Creating a Desktop Printer Icon 299
Setting Up Options 299
Installing Adobe Type Manager 300
Installing Screen fonts 300
Changing to EtherTalk 301
Mac OS X **302**
Installing the PPD Files 302
Setting Up the PPD File 302
Setting Up Options 303
Using USB Interface 303
Using Bonjour (Rendezvous) 304
Changing to EtherTalk 305
Configuring the Printer **306**
Using PostScript 3 ..... **307**
Job Type 307
User Code 318
Paper Size 318
Fit to Paper 318
Input Slot 319
Resolution 319
Orientation Override 319
Toner Saving 320
Collate 320
Paper Type 320
Dithering 321
Printer Utility for Mac **322**
Installing Printer Utility for Mac 322
Starting Printer Utility for Mac 323
Printer Utility for Mac Functions 324

10.Security Measures Provided by this Printer

Using Authentication and Managing Users **331**
Preventing Information Leaks **332**
Limiting and Controlling Access **333**
Enhanced Network Security **334**
Configuring SSL Encryption **335**

11.Appendix

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM 337
Printer Drivers for This Printer 338
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin 339
DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client 340
Cautions to Take When Using in a network 342
Connecting a Dial-up Router to a Network 342
Using DHCP 343
Configuring the WINS Server 345
Using the Dynamic DNS Function 346
Installing Font Manager 2000 348
Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0 349
When Using Windows Terminal Service/MetaFrame 350
Operating Environment 350
Supported Printer Drivers 350
Limitations 351
Copyright Information about Installed Applications 353
expat 353
JPEG LIBRARY 353
NetBSD 354
Samba(Ver 2.2.2-1.1) 356
RSA BSAFE ® 356

INDEX 357

1. Preparing for Printing

Quick Install

Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 users can easily install this software using the CD-ROM provided.

Quick Install sets the TCP/IP port and installs DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client and the RPCS printer driver.

Important

- ❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrator.
- ❒ The Quick Install is not available when using this printer under USB connection.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [Quick Install].

The software license agreement appears in the **[License Agreement]** dialog box.

5 After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

6 Select the printer model you want to use in the [Select Printer] dialog box.

For network connection via TCP/IP, select the printer whose IP address is displayed in **[Connect To]**.

For parallel connection, select the printer whose printer port is displayed in **[Connect To]**.

7 Click [Install].

The printer driver installation starts.

8 Click [Finish].

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

9 Click [Exit] in the first dialog box of the installer, and then take out the CD-ROM.

Note

❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

❒ Select a printer to whose IP address is displayed in **[Connect To]** to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client when using TCP/IP.

❒ Download the printer driver from the supplier's web site when using under Windows NT 4.0.

Reference

p.52 "Making Option Settings for the Printer"

p.46 "Installing the Printer Driver Using USB"

Confirming the Connection Method

This printer supports network and local connection.

Before installing the printer driver, check how the printer is connected. Follow the driver installation procedure that is appropriate to the connection method.

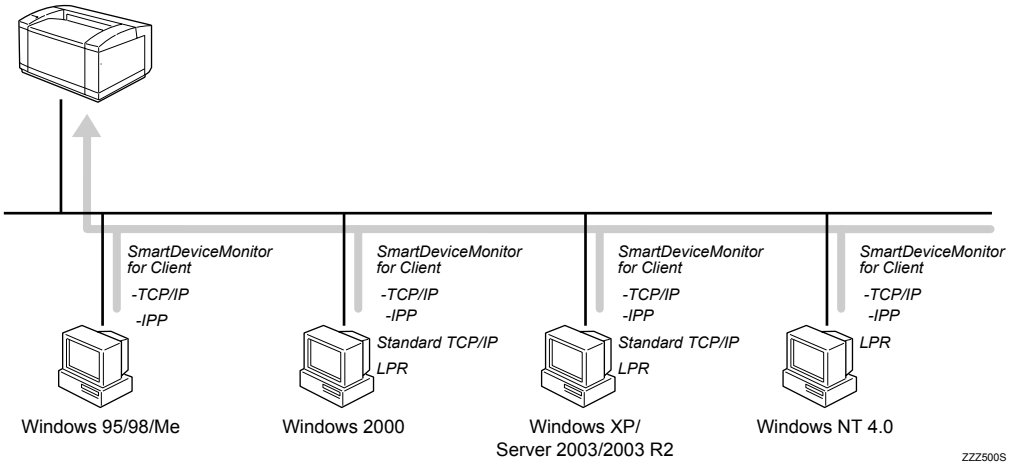
Network Connection

This printer can be used as a Windows printing port or network printer.

Using this printer as the Windows printing port

Network connections can be established through Ethernet and IEEE 802.11b.

Available ports are determined based on the combination of Windows operating system version and connection method used.



1

❖ Windows 95/98

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port

❖ Windows Me

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port

❖ Windows 2000

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP port LPR port

❖ Windows XP

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP port LPR port

❖ Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port Standard TCP/IP port LPR port

❖ Windows NT 4.0

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet/IEEE 802.11b	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port LPR port

Note

❒ See the explanation of how to install the printer driver for each type of port.

Reference

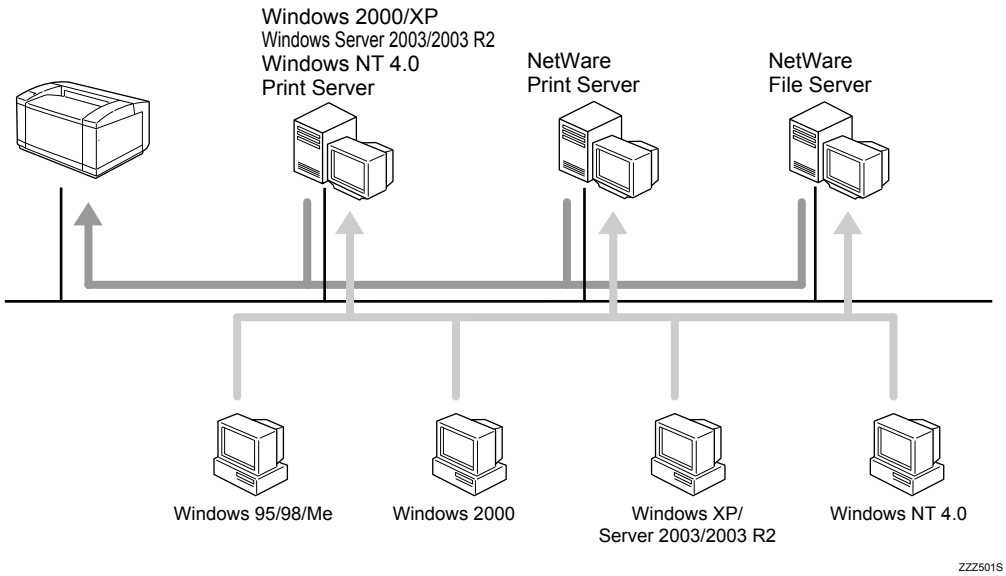
p.7 “Using the SmartDeviceMonitor Port”
p.26 “Using the Standard TCP/IP Port”
p.32 “Using the LPR Port”

Using as a network printer

This printer can be used as the Windows network printer, the NetWare print server, or the NetWare remote printer.

Important

❒ In an IPv6 environment, Netware servers cannot be used.



Note

❒ See the explanation of how to install the printer driver for each type of network printer.

Reference

p.37 “Using as the Windows Network Printer”

p.42 “Using as the NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer”

Local Connection

Local connections can be established via USB connection.

Windows operating system version that can use the USB connection is as follows:

- Windows Me
- Windows 2000
- Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

Note

❒ See the explanation about how to install the printer driver for USB connection.

Reference

p.46 “Installing the Printer Driver Using USB”

Using the SmartDeviceMonitor Port

Installing DeskTopBinder-SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Important

- ❒ To install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrator.
- ❒ Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client before installing the printer driver when using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].

5 The message to quit all other applications appears. Quit all applications, and then click [Next>].

6 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box. After reading through its contents, click [Yes].

7 Click [Full install] or [Custom Install].

[Full install] installs all required applications: DeskTopBinder Lite and SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

[Custom Install] installs selected applications.

8 Follow the instructions on the display and click [Next>] to proceed next step.

9 After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and click [Complete].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.

Installing the RPCS Printer Driver (TCP/IP)

Important

❒ To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [RPCS Printer Driver].**
5. **The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.**

   After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.
6. **Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.**

   You can select several printer drivers.
7. **Click [Next >].**
8. **Select the printer model you want to use.**

   The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.
9. **Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.**

   The details shown in **[Comment:]** , **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
10. **Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**
11. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [OK].**
12. **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

    A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

⓭ Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]**, and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

⓮ Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].

⓯ Set a user code, if necessary.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. No alphabetic character or symbol can be entered.

⓰ Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

⓱ Click [Continue].

Installation starts.

⓲ After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ Under Windows 95/98/Me, you cannot add an IPv4 address partially similar to the one already used. For example, if "192.168.0.2" is in use, "192.168.0.2xx" cannot be used. Similarly, if "192.168.0.20" is in use, "192.168.0.2" cannot be used.
- ❒ This allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check statistics about the number of sheets which each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
- ❒ A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, install using **[Add Printer]**.

Reference

p.50 "Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM"

Installing the RPCS Printer Driver (IPP)

Important

❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [RPCS Printer Driver].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.

6 Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9 Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

10 Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [OK].

11 Click [IPP].

12 In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://printer's address/printer" as the printer's address.

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://printer's address/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IPv4 address: 192.168.15.16)

`http://192.168.15.16/printer`

`https://192.168.15.16/printer`

You can enter "http: //printer's address/ipp" as the printer's address.

13 Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

14 Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

15 Click [OK].

16 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

17 Set a user code, if necessary.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. No alphabetic characters or symbols can be entered.

18 Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

19 Click [Continue].

Installation starts.

20 After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ This allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check the number of sheets each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
- ❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.
- ❒ A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**.

Reference

p.50 "Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM"

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - TCP/IP)

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**
   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**
   A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.
7. **Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next >].**
8. **In the [Available ports:] box, click [Printer Port], and then click [Next >].**
9. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**
   Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.
10. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**
11. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
    The **[Printers]** window appears.
12. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
13. **On the [Details] tab, click [Add Port...].**
14. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor] in the [Other] list, and then click [OK].**
15. **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**
    A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

⑯ Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]**, and then enter the IPv4 address or host name of the printer.

You cannot add an IPv4 address partially similar to the one already used. For example, if "192.168.0.2" is in use, "192.168.0.2xx" cannot be used. Similarly, if "192.168.0.20" is in use, "192.168.0.2" cannot be used.

⑰ Click [OK].

⑱ Check that the selected port is highlighted in [Print to the following port:], and then click [OK].

⑲ Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - IPP)

Important

❒ IPv6 cannot be used under Windows 95/98/Me.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**
   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**
   A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.
7. **Select the name of the printer whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next >].**
8. **In the [Available ports:] box, click [Printer Port], and then click [Next >].**
9. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**
   Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.
10. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**
11. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
    The **[Printers]** window appears.
12. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
13. **On the [Details] tab, click [Add Port...].**
14. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor] in the Other list, and then click [OK].**
15. **Click [IPP].**

16 In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://(printer's address)/printer" as the printer's address.

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://(printer's address)/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IPv4 address: 192.168.15.16)

http://192.168.15.16/printer

https://192.168.15.16/printer

You can enter "http://(printer's address)/ipp" as the printer's address.

17 Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

18 Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

19 Click [OK].

20 Check that the selected port is highlighted in [Print to the following port:], and then click [OK].

21 Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - TCP/IP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**
7. **Click [Create a new port:].**
8. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**
9. **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

   A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.
10. **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

    Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]**, and then enter the IPv4 address or host name of the printer.
11. **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**
12. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

⓭ Specify whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].

⓮ Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

⓯ Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - IPP)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ IPv6 cannot be used under Windows 2000.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Create a new port:].**

8 **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**

9 **Click [IPP].**

10 **In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://(printer's address)/printer" as the printer's address.**

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter “https://(printer’s address)/printer” (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IPv4 address: 192.168.15.16)

`http://192.168.15.16/printer`

`https://192.168.15.16/printer`

You can enter “http://(printer’s address)/ipp” as the printer’s address.

11 **Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the name of any existing port.**

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

⓬ Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

⓭ Click [OK].

⓮ Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

⓯ Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

⓰ Click [Next >].

⓱ Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

⓲ Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - TCP/IP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].**
7. **Click [Create a new port:].**
8. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**
9. **Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].**

   A list of printers using **[TCP/IP]** appears.
10. **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**

    Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click **[Specify Address]**, and then enter the IPv4 address or host name of the printer.
11. **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**
12. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

⓭ Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

⓮ Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected:Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - IPP)

Important

❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Create a new port:].**

8 **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].**

9 **Click [IPP].**

10 **In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://(printer's address)/printer" as the printer's address.**

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter “https://(printer’s address)/printer” (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IPv4 address: 192.168.15.16)

`http://192.168.15.16/printer`

`https://192.168.15.16/printer`

You can enter “http://(printer’s address)/ipp” as the printer’s address.

If you are using Firefox or Netscape under Windows XP SP 2 or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you can enter IPv6 address as “http://IPv6 printer’s address/printer”.

11 **Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.**

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the **[Printer URL]** box becomes the IPP port name.

⓬ [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

For information about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

⓭ Click [OK].

⓮ Check that the name of the printer driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

⓯ Change the name of the printer if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

⓰ Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

⓱ Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Changing the Port Settings for SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Follow the procedure below to change the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client settings, such as TCP/IP timeout, recovery/parallel printing, and printer groups.

Windows 95/98/Me:

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
2. **In the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
3. **Click the [Details] tab, and then click [Port Settings...].**
   The **[Port Settings]** dialog box appears.

Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0:

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
2. **In the [Printers] window, click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
3. **Click the [Ports] tab, click [Configure Port...].**
   The **[Port Configuration]** dialog box appears.

Windows XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2:

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**
2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**
3. **Click the [Ports] tab, and then click [Configure Port...].**
   The **[Port Configuration]** dialog box appears.

Note

- For TCP/IP, timeout setting can be configured.
- User, proxy, and timeout settings can be configured for IPP.
- If no settings on the **[Recovery/Parallel Printing]** tab are available, follow the procedure below.
  1. Click **[Cancel]** to close the **[Port Configuration:]** dialog box.
  2. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, and then right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon on the tasktray.
  3. Point to **[Properties]**, and then click **[Extended Features Settings]**.
  4. Select the **[Set Recovery/Parallel Printing for each port]** check box.
  5. Click **[OK]** to close the **[Extended Features Settings]** dialog box.
- For information about these settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

Using the Standard TCP/IP Port

Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

Important

- ❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- ❒ In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the Standard TCP/IP Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor port

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [RPCS Printer Driver].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.

6 Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Click [Next >].

8 Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

9 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

10 Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

11 Click [Standard TCP/IP Port], and then click [OK].

Configure the Standard TCP/IP port settings, and then see Windows Help if **[Standard TCP/IP Port]** does not appear.

⓬ Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

⓭ Enter the printer name or IPv4 address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.

The **[Port Name]** text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary.

When screen for Device selection appears, select "RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model".

⓮ Click [Next >].

⓯ Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

The installation start dialog box reappears.

⓰ Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

⓱ Configure the default printer as necessary.

⓲ Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

⓳ After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.
- ❒ A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**.

Reference

p.50 "Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM"

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the Standard TCP/IP Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor port.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].

7 Click [Create a new port:].

8 Click [Standard TCP/IP Port], and then click [Next >].

9 Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

10 Enter the printer name or IPv4 address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box, and then click [Next >].

When screen for Device selection appears, select "RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model".

11 Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

12 Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].

13 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

14 Click [Next >].

15 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next>].

16 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the Standard TCP/IP Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor port.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [Local printer attached to this printer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Click [Create a new port:].**

8 **Click [Standard TCP/IP Port] in [Create a new Port], and then click [Next >].**

9 **Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

10 **Enter the printer name or IPv4 address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.**

The **[Port Name]** text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary.

When screen for Device selection appears, select "RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model".

11 **Click [Next >].**

12 **Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.**

13 **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**

14 Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

15 Click [Next >].

16 Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

17 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Using the LPR Port

Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

Important

- To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the LPR Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor port.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [RPCS Printer Driver].**
5. **The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.**

   After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.
6. **Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.**

   You can select several printer drivers.
7. **Select the printer model you want to use.**

   The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.
8. **Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.**

   The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.
9. **Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**
10. **Click [LPR Port], and then click [OK].**

    If **[LPR Port]** does not appear, see Windows Help and install it.

11 Enter the printer's IPv4 address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.

12 Enter "lp" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server] box, and then click [OK].

The port is added.

13 Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

14 Configure the default printer as necessary.

15 Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

16 After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.
- ❒ A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**.

Reference

p.50 "Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM".

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the LPR Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor port.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**
   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Local printer], and then click [Next >].**
7. **Click [Create a new port:].**
8. **Click [LPR Port], and then click [Next >].**
9. **Enter the printer's IPv4 address in the [Port Name] box, and then click [OK].**
10. **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**
11. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**
    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.
12. **Specify whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].**
13. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**
14. **Click [Finish].**
    The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the LPR Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor port.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Local Printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].**
7. **Click [Create a new port:].**
8. **Click [LPR Port] in [Create a new Port], and then click [Next >].**
9. **Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.**
10. **Enter "lp" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server] box, and then click [OK].**
11. **Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].**
12. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**

    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.
13. **Click [Next >].**
14. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].**
15. **Click [Finish].**

    The printer driver installation starts.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Using as the Windows Network Printer

Installing the RPCS Printer Driver

To use the print server, install the printer driver by selecting "Network printer server", and then select the Windows 2000/XP, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 shared printer.

This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a Windows 2000/XP, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 print server. Do not begin the following procedure before the client is set up and configured correctly.

Important

- ❒ To install printer driver under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. For this, log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- ❒ If you print with a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing cannot be used from the client.
- ❒ SmartDeviceMonitor's notification functions are not available if you are using a Windows XP or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 print server.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [RPCS Printer Driver].

5 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.

6 Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7 Click [Next >].

8 Select the printer models you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

9 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

⑩ Click [Port:], and then click [Add].

⑪ Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].

⑫ Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.

⑬ Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

⑭ Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].

⑮ Configure the User Code as necessary.

For an RPCS printer driver, a User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

⑯ Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.

⑰ Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

⑱ After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.
- ❒ A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use **[Add Printer]**.

Reference

p.50 "Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM"

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me)

Important

❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**
   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**
   Add Printer Wizard starts.
5. **Click [Next >].**
6. **Click [Network Printer], and then click [Next >].**
7. **Click [Browse].**
8. **Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.**
9. **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].**
10. **Check the location of the selected printer is shown, and then click [Next >].**
11. **Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].**
    Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.
12. **Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].**
13. **Restart the computer.**

Note

❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000)

Important

❒ Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.

1 Quit all applications currently running.

2 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4 Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 Click [Next >].

6 Click [Network printer], and then click [Next >].

7 Select the location method from the [Locate Your Printer] screen, and then click [Next >].

8 Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers:] window.

9 Select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next >].

10 The printer driver installation starts.

11 Click [Next >].

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 Click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.

❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2)

Important

- ❒ Installing this printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.
- ❒ If you print from a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, the client cannot use Recovery Printing and Parallel Printing.
- ❒ If you print with a Windows XP or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 print server, SmartDeviceMonitor notification functions may not be possible for the client.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

3 **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The default interface language is English.

4 **Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].**

Add Printer Wizard starts.

5 **Click [Next >].**

6 **Click [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer], and then click [Next >].**

7 **Select [Browse for a printer], and then click [Next >].**

8 **Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers] window.**

9 **Select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next >].**

10 **The printer driver installation starts.**

11 **Click [Next >].**

Select the **[Yes]** check box to configure the printer as default.

12 **Click [Finish].**

Restart the computer to complete installation.

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi.
- ❒ A User Code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about User Code, see the printer driver Help.

Using as the NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer

This explains how to set up the Windows computer used as the NetWare client.

Important

❒ To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.

❒ In an IPv6 environment, Netware servers cannot be used.

The following explanation assumes NetWare Client is installed on the client computer and the NetWare server environment is correctly set up. Install all necessary client applications before following this procedure.

Set up the printer driver while logging on to the NetWare file server.

The following values are used in the example:

- Operating system: Windows 98
- NetWare version: 4.1
- File server name: CAREE
- Queue name: R-QUEUE

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

2 Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

3 Click [RPCS Printer Driver].

4 The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click **[I accept the agreement.]**, and then click **[Next >]**.

5 Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

6 Click [Next >].

7 Select the printer models you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the **[Change settings for 'Printer Name']** box.

8 Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in **[Comment:]**, **[Driver:]**, and **[Port:]** vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

9 **Click [Port:], and then click [Add].**

10 **Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].**

11 **Double-click the name of the NetWare file server on the network tree.**

The created queue is displayed.

12 **Select the print queue, and then click [OK].**

13 **Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port:].**

14 **Click [Continue].**

The printer driver installation starts.

15 **Click [Finish] in the [Select Program] dialog box.**

16 **After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].**

Restart the computer to complete installation.

17 **After restarting the computer, launch the [Printers] window, and then open the printer properties.**

Under Windows XP or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, open the printer properties from the **[Printers and Faxes]** window.

18 **Click [Finish] in the [Introduction complete] dialog box.**

19 **In the [Printers] window, open the printer properties.**

Under Windows XP or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, open the printer properties from the **[Printers and Faxes]** window.

20 **On the [Printer Settings] tab, clear the [Form Feed] and [Enable Banner] check boxes.**

Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, or Windows NT 4.0, click the **[NetWare setting]** tab.

Do not select these check boxes since they are automatically selected by the printer driver. If you select the check boxes, the printer may not print correctly.

21 **Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ To stop installation of the selected software, click **[Cancel]** before installation is complete.
- ❒ The protocol is set to inactive as default. Enable it using Web Image Monitor or telnet.

When using the PostScript 3 Printer Driver

Follow the procedure below to set up the PostScript 3 printer driver.

Important

❒ In an IPv6 environment, NetWare servers cannot be used.

1. **In the [Printers] or [Printers and Faxes] window, open the printer properties.**
2. **Click the [PostScript] tab.**

   If you are using Windows 2000/XP or Windows NT4.0, click the **[Device Settings]** tab, and then clear the check boxes.
3. **Click [Advanced].**
4. **Clear the [Send CTRL+D before job] and [Send CTRL+D after job] check boxes, and then click [OK].**
5. **Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.**

Form Feed

Do not use NetWare to configure form feed. Form feed is controlled by the printer driver on Windows. If NetWare form feed is configured, the printer may not print properly.

Follow the procedure below to disable form feed according to the operating system used:

- Under Windows 95/98/Me, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[Printer Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, or Windows NT 4.0, clear the **[Form feed]** check box on the **[NetWare Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Banner Page

Do not use NetWare to configure a banner page.

Follow the procedure below to disable banner pages according to the operating system used:

- Under Windows 95/98/Me, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[Printer Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.
- Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, or Windows NT 4.0, clear the **[Enable banner]** check box on the **[NetWare Settings]** tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Printing after Resetting the Printer

Printer to print server connection requires 30 - 40 seconds to resume after the printer is reset. During this period, jobs may be accepted (depending on NetWare specifications) but not printed.

To print after resetting the printer as the remote printer, check on the print server that the remote printer is disconnected, or wait for two minutes before trying to print.

Installing the Printer Driver Using USB

This section explains how to install printer drivers using USB.

Before installing, check that only the operating system is running on the computer and no print jobs are in progress.

The printer drivers can be installed from the supplied CD-ROM provided with this machine.

Windows Me - USB

The following explains how to install the printer driver using USB under Windows Me.

Important

- ❒ Installation via USB is not possible under Windows 95 / 98. Upgrade to Windows Me or later.
- ❒ Download USB Printing Support for Windows Me from the supplier's Web site.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

1 Download USB Printing Support from the supplier's Web site.

Use a search to find the model name, and then download USB Printing Support from the supplier's Web site.

Save it where you can locate it easily.

2 Check the printer's power switch is off.

3 Connect the machine to the computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

4 Turn on the printer's power switch.

The Plug and Play is enabled, and [Found New Hardware Wizard] appears.

If USB Printing Support is already installed on the computer proceed to Step 10.

5 In the [Found New Hardware Wizard] display, click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].

6 Select the [Specify a location:] check box, and then click [Browse...].

The **[Browse for Folder]** dialog box appears.

7 Specify the location where USB Printing Support is located, and then click [Next >].

8 Check the location, and then click [Next >].

USB Printing Support is installed.

9 Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

10 Install the printer driver.

11 In the [Found New Hardware Wizard] dialog box, click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].

12 Select the [Specify a location:] check box, and then click [Browse...].

The **[Browse for Folder]** dialog box appears.

13 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

Note

❒ When Auto Run starts, click **[Exit]**.

❒ To disable Auto Run, press the **【Shift】** key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

14 Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver are stored, and then click [Next >].

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:\DRIVERS\RPCS\WIN9X_ME\(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:\DRIVERS\PS\WIN9X_ME\(Language)DISK1

15 Check the location, and then click [Next >].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

16 Click [Finish].

Installation is complete. If installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

Note

❒ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.

❒ It is not necessary to reinstall USB Printing Support when connecting a different machine via USB interface when USB Printing Support is installed.

❒ After installing USB Printing Support, if the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer.

Windows 2000 - USB

The following explains how to install the printer driver using USB under Windows 2000.

Important

❒ Installing a printer driver requires Administrator permission. Log on using an account that has Administrator permission.

When USB is first used, Found New Hardware Wizard starts, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the supplied CD-ROM.

1 Connect the machine to the computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

2 In the Found New Hardware Wizard display, click [Search for a suitable driver for my device [recommended]], and then click [Next >].

3 Select the [Specify location] check box, and then click [Next >].

4 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

When Auto Run starts, click **[Cancel]**, and then **[Exit]**.

To disable Auto Run, press the left 【Shift】 key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

5 Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver are stored.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:\DRIVERS\RPCS\WIN2K_XP\(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:\DRIVERS\PS\WIN2K_XP\(Language)DISK1

6 Check the printer driver location, and then click [OK].

7 Click [Next >].

8 Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

Note

❒ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2- USB

The following explains how to install the printer driver using USB under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2.

Important

❒ Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

When USB is first used, Found New Hardware Wizard starts, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the **[Printers]** window.

The printer drivers can be installed from the supplied CD-ROM provided with this machine.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the supplied CD-ROM.

1 Connect the machine to the computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

2 In the Found New Hardware Wizard display, click [Install the software automatically (Recommended)], and then click [Next >].

3 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If Auto Run starts, click **[Cancel]**, and then **[Exit]**.

To disable Auto Run, press the left 【Shift】 key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following location:

- RPCS
  D:\DRIVERS\RPCS\WIN2K_XP\(Language)DISK1
- PostScript 3
  D:\DRIVERS\PS\WIN2K_XP\(Language)DISK1

4 Select the machine model you want to use in the Found New Hardware Wizard display, and then click [Next >].

5 Click [Continue Anyway].

6 Click [Finish].

If installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the **[Printers and Faxes]** window.

Note

❒ The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.

Having Problems Installing the Printer Driver from the CD-ROM

If Quick Install fails, refer to "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client" and proceed with the installation.

If the installation procedures explained in "Installing RPCS Printer Drivers" or "Installing PostScript 3 Printer Driver" fails, follow the procedure below.

For Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000 and Windows NT 4.0:

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
2. **Double-click the Add Printer icon.**
3. **Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.**

   If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the RPCS printer driver is either DRIVERSRPCSWIN9X_ME, or DRIVERSRPCSWIN2K_XP. If the installer starts, click **[Cancel]** to quit.
4. **Change the port settings.**

   Refer to the port description for the procedure.

For Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2:

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**
2. **Click [Add a printer].**
3. **Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.**

   If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the RPCS printer driver is DRIVERSRPCS WIN2K_XP. If the installer starts, click **[Cancel]** to quit.
4. **Change the port settings.**

   Refer to the port description for the procedure.

For Windows XP Home Editions:

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].**
2. **Click [Printers and Other Hardware].**
3. **Click [Printers and Faxes].**
4. **Click [Install Printer].**
5. **Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.**

   If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the RPCS printer driver is DRIVERSRPCSWIN2K_XP. If the installer starts, click **[Cancel]** to quit.

6. **Change the port settings.**

   Refer to the port description for the procedure.

Note

❒ Available ports may change depending on the combination of Windows operating system version and the interface. For details about how to find an available port, see "Confirming the Connection Method".

Reference

p.3 “Confirming the Connection Method”

p.7 “Using the SmartDeviceMonitor Port”

p.26 “Using the Standard TCP/IP Port”

p.32 “Using the LPR Port”

Making Option Settings for the Printer

1

Make option settings for the printer using the printer driver when bidirectional communication is disabled.

Conditions for Bidirectional Communication

Bidirectional communication allows information about paper size and feed direction settings to be automatically sent to the printer. You can check printer status from your computer.

- Bidirectional communication is supported by Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0.
- If you use the RPCS printer driver and bidirectional communication is enabled under Windows 2000, the **[Change Accessories]** tab is unavailable.

Note

❒ The RPCS printer driver supports bidirectional communications and updates the printer status automatically.

❒ The PostScript 3 printer driver does not support bidirectional communications.

To support bidirectional communication, the following conditions must be met:

❖ **When connected with the network**

- DeskTopBinder Lite must be installed, or the Standard TCP/IP port must be used.
- Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003, **[Enable bidirectional support]** must be selected, and **[Enable printer pooling]** must not be selected on the **[Ports]** tab with the RPCS printer driver.

If the Standard TCP/IP port is not being used, one of the following conditions must be met in addition to the two above:

- The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port and the TCP/IP protocol must be used.
- The standard TCP/IP port must be used without changing the default port name (for Windows 2000 / XP and Windows Server 2003).
- Microsoft TCP/IP print IP address must be specified for use (for Windows NT 4.0).

❖ **When connected with USB**

The printer must be connected to the computer's USB port using the USB interface cable.
The computer must support bidirectional communication.

Note

❒ Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client from the CD-ROM provided.

If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled

Configure the option settings as follows when bidirectional communication is disabled.

Important

- ❒ Under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, Manage Printers permission is required to change the printer properties in the **[Printers]** folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member to acquire this permission.
- ❒ Under Windows NT 4.0, Full Control permission is required to change the printer properties in the **[Printers]** folder. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member to acquire this permission.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

4 Click the [Change Accessories] tab.

If the options in the **[Change Accessories]** tab are disabled, bidirectional connection is enabled. If this is the case, you do not need to make any changes to the option settings.

If you are using the RPCS printer driver, click the **[Change Accessories]** tab.

If you are using the PostScript 3 printer driver, click the **[Device Settings]** tab.

5 In the Option area, select the options that are installed, and then make the necessary settings.

If you are using the RPCS printer driver: in the **[Select printer options:]** box, select the options that are installed.

If you are using the PostScript 3 printer driver: in the **[Installable Options]** box, change the status of the options that are installed.

6 In [Total memory:], select the total amount of memory, when the optional SDRAM module is added.

7 Click the icon of the installed printer, then select [Printing Preferences...] on the [File] menu.

8 Under [Paper source tray settings:], click and highlight the tray to be used, and then select the appropriate size, position, and type for the tray. Select the [Do not use Auto Tray Select] check box to exclude the tray from automatic tray selection.

9 Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.

Memory Capacity and Paper Size

1

Additional memory other than the standard memory may be required depending on a job's paper size and data type.

Important

❒ Available paper sizes change depending on the selection you made for **[Memory Usage]** in the System menu.

❒ The default SDRAM module (512 MB) must be installed.

❖ **Only single-sided printing (600 × 600 dpi)**

- Font Priority:
  Complex images might fail to print out properly on 914.4 × 15000 mm, 914.4 × 2000 mm, and 36″ × 48″ sized paper.
  Other paper sizes can be printed on.
- Frame Priority:
  Complex images might fail to print out properly on 914.4 × 15000 mm sized paper.
  Other paper sizes can be printed on.

RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties

There are two dialog box types of the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box. "Multi-tab" is used as an example in this manual. For details about changing the dialog box types, see the printer driver Help.

❖ **Multi-tab**
This dialog box type is designed for users who often change print settings to perform various printing operations.

❖ **Custom Setting**
This dialog box type is designed for users who rarely change print settings. This type of dialog box may vary depending on the installed options.

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

This describes how to launch printer driver's properties.

Making printer default settings

To make the printer default settings, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from the **[Printers]** window.

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1 **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3 **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

When you open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 95/98/Me.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name:] list, and then click [Properties...].**

   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

4. **Click [OK] to start printing.**

Note

- The procedure to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

This describes how to launch printer driver's properties.

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

When you open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.
- ❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer default settings - printing preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
   The **[Printers]** window appears.
2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**
3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**
   The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.
4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 2000.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**
   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.
2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**
3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.**

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties

This describes how to launch printer driver's properties.

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1 **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2 **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3 **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

When you open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.
- ❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer default settings - printing preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

   The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**

   The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.**

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

This describes how to launch printer driver's properties.

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The **[Printers]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3 On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

When you open the printer properties dialog box initially after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After clicking **[OK]**, the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4 Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.
- ❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer default settings - default

Important

- ❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.
- ❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**
   The **[Printers]** window appears.
2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**
3. **On the [File] menu, click [Document Defaults...].**
   The **[Default]** dialog box appears.
4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

- ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- ❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows NT 4.0.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**
   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.
2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].**
   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.
3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**
4. **Click [OK] to start printing.**

Note

- ❒ The procedure to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- ❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- ❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- ❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- ❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

PostScript 3 - Setting Up for Printing

Windows 95/98/Me - Accessing the Printer Properties

This describes how to launch printer driver's properties.

Making printer default settings

To make the printer default settings, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from the **[Printers]** window.

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 95/98/Me.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name...] list, and then click [Properties...].**

   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

4. **Click [OK] to start printing.**

Note

- The procedure to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer default settings - printing preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**

   The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows 2000.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.**

Note

- The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

   The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer default settings - printing preferences

Important

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].**

   The **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].**

   The **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2.

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Print...].**

   The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.**

3. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.**

Note

- The procedure to open the **[Printing Preferences]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Windows NT 4.0 - Accessing the Printer Properties

Making printer default settings - the printer properties

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3. **On the [File] menu, click [Properties].**

   The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

4. **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

   Note

   ❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

   ❒ Do not make a setting for **[Form to Tray Assignment]**.

   ❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer default settings - default

Important

❒ To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators, and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.

❒ You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box are applied to all users.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].**

   The **[Printers]** window appears.

2. **Click the icon of the printer you want to use.**

3 **On the [File] menu, click [Document Defaults...].**

The **[Default]** dialog box appears.

4 **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows NT 4.0.

1 **On the [File] menu, click [Print].**

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 **Select the printer you want to use in the [Name:] list, and then click [Properties].**

The **[Printer Properties]** dialog box appears.

3 **Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].**

4 **Click [OK] to start printing.**

Note

❒ The procedure to open the **[Printer Properties]** dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.

❒ With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.

❒ Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.

❒ General users can change the properties displayed in the **[Print]** dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.

❒ For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

Mac OS - Setting Up for Printing

Making paper settings from an application

1. **Open the file you want to print.**
2. **On the [File] menu, click [Page Setup].**
3. **Check that the printer you want to use is displayed in [Printer:], and then select the paper size you want to use in [Paper:].**

   Under Mac OS X, select the paper size in **[Paper Size]**.

   If the printer you want to use is not displayed in **[Printer:]**, select the printer you want to use.
4. **Configure the settings, and then click [OK].**

Note

❒ The **[Page Setup]** dialog box varies depending on the application you use. For details, see the manuals provided with the Mac OS.

Setting up for printing from an application

1. **Open the file you want to print.**
2. **On the [File] menu, click [Print].**
3. **Check that the printer is selected in the [Printer] list, and then make the printer settings.**
4. **Configure the settings, and then click [OK].**

Printing a PDF File Directly

You can send PDF files directly to this printer for printing, without having to open a PDF application.

Important

- ❒ The function can be used with genuine Adobe PDF files only.
- ❒ This function supports version 1.3, 1.4, and 1.5 PDF files.
- ❒ PDF files created using Crypt Filter and/or the 16 bit color image function of PDF version 1.5 cannot be printed.
- ❒ PDF version 1.6 (Acrobat 7.0) files created without any functions that are exclusive to PDF version 1.6 can be printed.
- ❒ Some types of High Compression PDF files may not be printed.

Note

- ❒ Paper size errors may occur when printing on custom size paper.

Printing Method

The following procedures explain the two methods of direct PDF printing - using DeskTopBinder Lite or by entering commands.

Using DeskTopBinder Lite

Installing DeskTopBinder Lite

Follow the procedure below to install DeskTopBinder Lite

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.

   Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch "Setup.exe" located on the CD-ROM root directory.
3. **Click [DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].**

   The **[DeskTopBinder Lite Setup]** dialog box appears.
4. **Click [DeskTopBinder] , and then click [Yes].**
5. **Follow the instructions on the display to install DeskTopBinder Lite.**

   If you are required to restart the computer after installing DeskTopBinder Lite, restart the computer and continue the configuration.

DeskTopBinder Lite Enhancements

Follow the DeskTopBinder Lite enhancement procedure to print PDF files directly.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs], [DeskTopBinder], and then click [Extended Features Wizard].**

   The **[Extended Features Wizard]** dialog box appears.
2. **Click [Start], and then click [Next>] repeatedly until the [Printing Function2] dialog box appears.**
3. **In the [Printing Function2] dialog box, click [Add...].**

   The **[PDF Direct Print Properties]** dialog box appears.
4. **Select the driver for this machine, and then click [OK].**

   The **[PDF Direct Print Properties]** dialog box closes.
5. **Click [Next>] repeatedly until [Finish] appears.**
6. **Click [Finish].**

   The **[Extended Features Wizard]** dialog box closes.

Function Palette

The Function Palette contains buttons for functions that have already been configured using DeskTopBinder Lite enhancement. You can use these buttons, to point Windows files, preview printouts, convert images, and register scanners for documents, without having to open DeskTopBinder Lite. To use these functions, simply drag a target file to the button for the required function and drop it there.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs], [DeskTopBinder], and then click [Function Palette].**

   An icon for the Function Palette is added to the task tray displayed at the bottom right of the screen.

2. **Right-click the new icon that has been added to the task tray, and then click [Properties...].**

   The **[Properties]** dialog box appears.

3. **Click the [Contents] tab, select the [PDF Direct Print] check box at the center, and then click [OK].**

   The **[Properties]** dialog box closes and the **[PDF Direct Print]** icon is added to the Function Palette.

PDF Direct Printing

Use the following method to print PDF files directly.

1. **Drag the PDF file you want to print to the PDF Direct Printing icon on the Function Palette and drop it there.**

   The **[Output File List - PDF Direct Print]** dialog box appears.

2. **Highlight the PDF file you want to print, and then click [OK].**

   The PDF file is printed.

Printing PDF Password-Protected Documents

Follow the procedure below to print password-protected PDF files.

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs], [DeskTopBinder], and the click [Extended Features Wizard].**

   The **[Extended Features Wizard]** dialog box appears.

2. **Click [Start], and then click [Next>] repeatedly until the [Printing Function2] dialog box appears.**

3. **In the [Printing Function2] dialog box, click [Properties].**

   The **[PDF Direct Print Properties]** dialog box appears.

4. **Select the [Use PDF Password] check box at the bottom right of the dialog box, and then click [OK].**

   The **[PDF Direct Print Properties]** dialog box closes.

5. **Click [Next>] repeatedly until [Finish] appears.**

6. **Click [Finish].**

   The **[Extended Features Wizard]** dialog box closes.

7. **Drag the PDF file you want to print over the PDF Direct Printing icon on the Function Palette and drop it there.**

   The **[Output File List - PDF Direct Print]** dialog box appears.

8. **Click on the PDF file you want to print, making it appear highlighted, and then click [OK].**

   The **[PDF Direct Print Properties]** dialog box appears.

9. **In the [PDF password:] box at the bottom right of the dialog box, enter the password for the PDF file you want to print, and then click [OK].**

   The password-protected PDF file is printed.

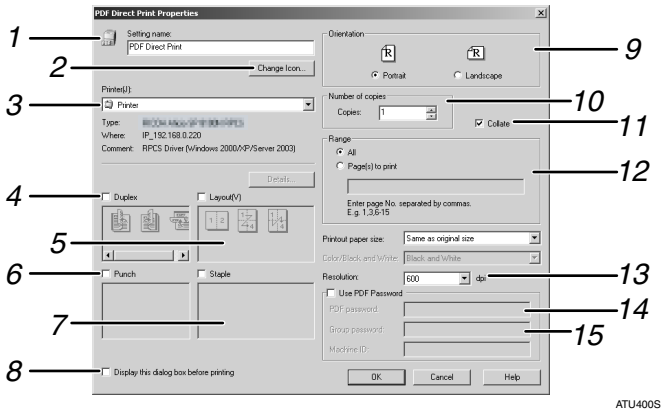
Note

❒ Before printing a password-protected PDF file, you must do one of the following:

- In the **[PDF Direct Print Properties]** dialog box, enter the password for the PDF file you want to print.
- Specify a password for the PDF file by selecting **[Change PDF Password]** in the **[PDF Menu]** on the machine's control panel.

❒ If a **[PDF Group Password]** for the **[PDF Menu]** has been specified using DeskTopBinder Lite or the machine's control panel, the same group password must be set on the other also.

PDF Direct Print Properties



ATU400S

1. Setting name:
Displays the plug-in configuration name (up to 63 single byte characters)

2. Change Icon...
Changes the icon displayed on the tool bar.

3. Printer:
Displays a list of RPCS drivers that support PDF direct printing.

4. Duplex (not selectable on this printer)
Prints on both sides of sheets.

5. Layout
Prints multiple pages on a single sheet.

6. Punch (not selectable on this printer)
Punches holes in printed output.

7. Staple (not selectable on this printer)
Staples printed output together.

8. Display this dialog box before printing
Appears in PDF direct printing mode if this check box is selected.

9. Orientation:
Specify the original's orientation.

10. Number of copies
Specify the number of copies to print.

11. Collate
Use to sort prints.

12. Range:
Specifies which paper to print.

13. Printout paper size:
Specify the paper size you want copies to be printed onto.

14. Color/Black and White: (not selectable on this printer)
Specify color or black-and-white printing.

15. Resolution:
Specify a print resolution.

16. PDF password:
Enter the password for password-protected PDF files. A password-protected PDF file cannot be printed unless its password is entered here.

17. Group password:
If a group password is assigned to DeskTopBinder Lite and this machine, enter the group password in this field. The group password must be entered for printing to start.

Using Commands

Under Windows and UNIX, you can print PDF files directly, using commands such as “ftp” “sftp” and “lpr”.

Reference

p.291 “Printing Files Directly from Windows”.

Using the Print Job Function

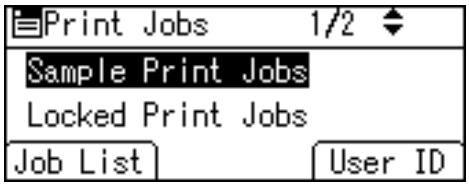
This describes how to print or delete files stored in the printer. There are following types of print files: Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print.

Print files sent from computers can be stored in the hard disk of the printer. Using the Print Job function, you can print or delete the print files.

Print Job Screen

When the printer is turned on, the following screen appears.

If you press **[Prt.Jobs]** on the initial screen, a screen prompting to select the type of print job appears.

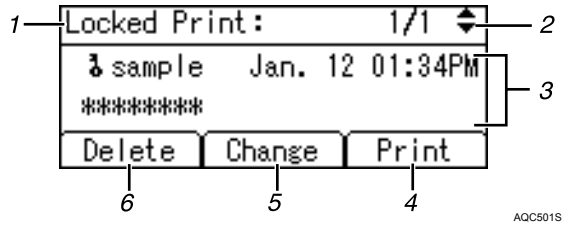


After selecting a type, you can select print files in the list by pressing:

- **[Job List]**
  Displays the Job List screen.
- **[User ID]**
  Displays the User ID screen.

If you select Sample Print, Locked Print, and Hold Print, the print files saved in the printer are deleted after printing is complete. If you select Stored Print, the files remain in the printer even after printing is finished.

❖ Job List Screen



1. The type of print jobs
Displays the type of the print job you select.

2. Page number
Displays the current page number. Each time pressing the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key, the screen switches.

3. User ID, Date/Time, and File Name display

- User ID shows the user's ID set by the printer driver.
- Date and Time show the time at which the print job was stored in the printer.
- File name shows the name of the file. However, "****" is shown instead of the file name for a Locked Print file.

4. [Print]
Prints a selected file.

5. [Change]
Changes or clears the password of a file if a password is set. To change the password of a Locked/Stored Print job, press **[Change]**, enter the current password, and then enter the new password on the confirmation screen.

To clear the password, press **[Change]**, leave the entering/confirming a new password box blank, and then press the 【OK】 key.

You can also set passwords to the Stored Print files that do not currently have passwords.

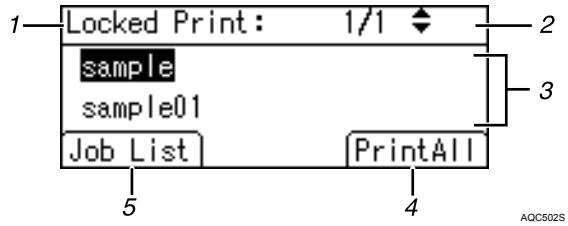
6. [Delete]
Deletes a selected file.

Note

❒ When you press **[Change]** to change or clear a password, you must first enter the existing password. If the password you entered is incorrect, you cannot change or clear any current passwords.

❒ You can use **[Change]** to set or clear passwords only Stored Print files are saved in the printer.

❖ User ID Screen



1. The type of print jobs
Displays the type of the print job you select.

2. Page number
Displays the current page number. Each time pressing the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key, the screen switches.

3. User ID

- User ID shows the ID of the user who stored the selected type of files.
- User ID set by the printer driver is shown.

4. [PrintAll]
Prints all files stored by the user whose user ID has been selected.

5. [Job List]
Switches the screen to the Job List screen.
Displays the print jobs of the selected user only.

Note

❒ To cancel selecting a file, press the 【**Job Reset**】 key.

❒ The display is not updated if a new file is stored while the list of stored files is displayed. To update the display, press the 【**Menu**】 key to return to the initial screen, and then press **[Prt.Jobs]** again.

❒ If a large number of print jobs are stored in the printer, processing may slow temporarily, depending on which functions are used.

Reference

For details about printing each type of print job, see the followings:

p.82 “Sample Print”
p.86 “Locked Print”
p.90 “Hold Print”
p.93 “Stored Print”

Printing from the Print Job Screen

This section gives instruction about Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print.

Sample Print

Use this function to print only the first set of a multiple-set print job. After you have checked the result, remaining sets can be printed or canceled using the printer's control panel. This can reduce misprints due to mistakes in content or settings.

Important

❒ A Sample Print file cannot be stored if:

- the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
- the file contains over 1,000 pages.
- sent or stored files in the printer contain over 3,000 pages in total.

Note

❒ If a Sample Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.

❒ Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents in the printer remain. However, the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** or **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]** settings are applied first.

❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Sample Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected from the application's **[Print]** dialog box, more prints than intended may be produced.

❒ If the first set of the Sample Print files is not as you expected and you do not want to print remaining sets, delete the Sample Print file using the display panel. If you print the remaining sets of the Sample Print file, the job in the printer is deleted automatically.

❒ Sample Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select **[Sample Print Jobs]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Sample Print files.

❒ If stored files have similar and long file names, recognizing the file you want to print on the display panel may be difficult. Print the file you want to print either by checking the user ID or the time the file is sent, or by changing the file name to something that can be recognized easily.

Reference

For details about the error log on the display panel, see p.103 "Checking the Error Log".

For details about the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** and **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]**, see p.125 "HD Management".

Printing a Sample Print file

The following procedure describes how to print a Sample Print file with the RPCS and PostScript 3 printer driver.

Important

❒ Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.

1 From an application, select a command to print.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3 In the [Job type:] box, click [Sample Print].

When printing with the PostScript 3 printer driver, click **[Sample Print]** in the **[Job Type:]** box on the **[Job Log]** tab.

4 Click [Details...], and then enter a User ID in the [User ID:] box.

This is used to identify the user. The user ID can be entered using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

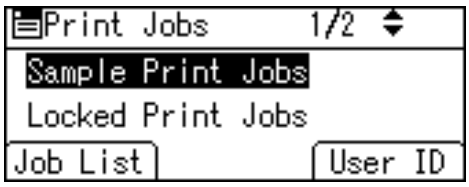
5 Execute a command to print.

Make sure to set more than two copies.

The Sample Print job is sent to the printer, and the first set is printed.

6 On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

7 Select [Sample Print Jobs] using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Job List].

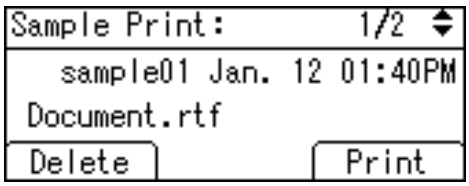


A list of Sample Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

You can print files also by pressing **[User ID]**.

8 **Select the file you want to print using the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key, and then press [Print].**



Enter the new number of sets using the scroll keys. You can enter up to 999 sets.

Press the 【**Escape**】 key to correct any entry mistakes.

9 **Press [Print].**

The remaining sets are printed.

Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

Note

❒ When the number of set quantity is changed, the changed quantity is applied to all selected files. When printing is completed, the stored file will be deleted.

❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the 【**Job Reset**】 key. The file will be deleted.

Reference

For details about **[User ID]**, see p.97 “Printing from the User ID Screen”.

Deleting Sample Print files

If you are not satisfied with the sample printout, you can delete the Sample Print file, revise it and print it again until the settings are suitable.

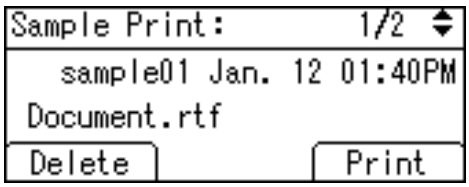
1. **Press [Prt.Jobs].**

2. **Select [Sample Print Jobs] using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Job List].**

A list of Sample Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. **Select the file you want to delete using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Delete].**



The delete confirmation screen will appear.

4. **Press [Delete].**

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press **[Cancel]**.

Locked Print

Use this function to maintain privacy when printing confidential documents on the printer over a shared network. Usually, it is possible to print data using the display panel once it is stored in this printer. When using Locked Print, it is not possible to print unless a password is entered on the printer's display panel. Your confidential documents will be safe from being viewed by other people.

Important

❒ A Locked Print file cannot be stored if:

- the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
- the file contains over 1,000 pages.
- sent or stored files in the printer contain over 3,000 pages in total.

Note

❒ If a Locked Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.

❒ Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents remain. However, the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** or **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]** settings are applied first.

❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. Locked Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver as default. If a collate option is selected in the application **[Print]** dialog box, more sets than intended may be printed.

❒ After the Locked Print file is printed, the job is automatically deleted.

❒ Locked Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select **[Locked Print Jobs]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Locked Print files.

Reference

For details about the error log on the display panel, see p.103 "Checking the Error Log".

For details about the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** and **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]**, p.125 "HD Management".

Printing a Locked Print file

The following procedure describes how to print a Locked Print file with the RPCS and PostScript 3 printer driver

Important

❒ Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.

1 **Configure the Locked Print in the printer driver's properties.**

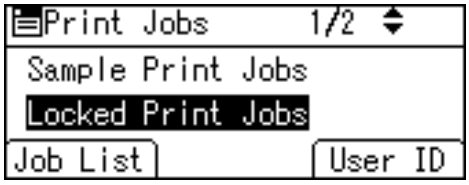
For details about configuring the printer drivers, see the corresponding Help files.

2 **Start printing from the application's [Print] dialog box.**

The Locked Print job is sent to the printer.

3 **On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].**

4 **Select [Locked Print Jobs] using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Job List.]**

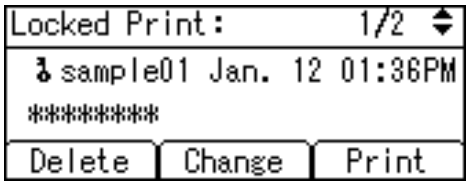


A list of Locked Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

You can print files also by pressing **[User ID]**.

5 **Select the file you want to print using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Print].**



The password screen appears.

6 **Enter the password using the 【▲】, 【▼】, 【◄】 or 【►】 key, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

The print confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press **[Clear]** to enter the password again.

If you forget your password, ask your network administrator for help.

7 **Press [Print].**

The remaining sets are printed.

Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

Note

❒ When printing is completed, the stored file will be deleted.

❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the 【Job Reset】 key. The file will be deleted.

Reference

For details about **[User ID]**, see p.97 “Printing from the User ID Screen”.

Deleting Locked Print files

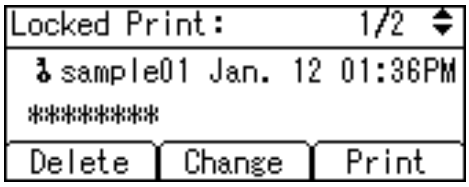
1 **Press [Prt.Jobs].**

2 **Select [Locked Print Jobs] using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Job List].**

A list of Locked Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3 **Select the file you want to delete using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Delete].**



The password screen appears.

4 **Enter the password using the [▲], [▼], [◄] or [►] key, and then press the [OK] key.**

The delete confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press **[Clear]** to enter the password again.

If you forget your password, ask your network administrator for help.

5 **Press [Delete].**

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press **[Cancel]**.

Hold Print

Use this function to temporarily hold a file in the printer, and print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.

Important

❒ A Hold Print file cannot be stored if:

- the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
- the file contains over 1,000 pages.
- sent or stored files in the printer contain over 3,000 pages in total.

Note

❒ If a Hold Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.

❒ Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents in the printer remain. However, the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** or **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]** settings are applied first.

❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Hold Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected from the application's **[Print]** dialog box, more prints than intended may be produced.

❒ Hold Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select **[Hold Print Jobs]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Hold Print files.

❒ If stored files have similar and long file names, recognizing the file you want to print on the display panel may be difficult. Print the file you want to print either by checking the user ID or the time the file is sent, or by changing the file name to something that can be recognized easily. If you enter the document name on the printer driver's **[Details...]**, that name appears on the display panel.

❒ It is possible, but not required, to set a file name or a password to a Hold Print file.

Reference

For details about the error log on the display panel, see p.103 "Checking the Error Log".

For details about the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** and **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]**, p.125 "HD Management".

Printing a Hold Print file

The following procedure describes how to print a Hold Print file with the RPCS printer driver. For information about how to print a Hold Print file with the PostScript 3 printer driver, see Postscript 3 Supplement.

Note

❒ Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.

1 **Configure Hold Print in the printer driver's properties.**

For details about configuring the printer drivers, see the relevant Help files.

2 **Click [Details...], and then enter a user ID in the [User ID:] box.**

You can also set a file name. The file name you set will be displayed on the printer's Job List screen.

3 **Start printing from the application's [Print] dialog box.**

The Hold Print job is sent to the printer and stored.

4 **On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].**

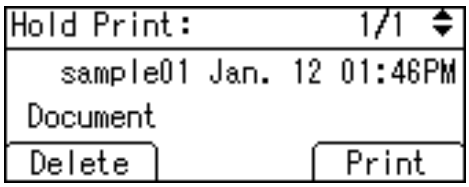
5 **Select [Hold Print Jobs] using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Job List].**

A list of Hold Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

You can print files also by pressing **[User ID]**.

6 **Select the file you want to print using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Print].**



The confirmation screen appears.

7 **Press [Print].**

The Hold Print file is printed.

Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

Note

- ❒ When printing is completed, the stored file will be deleted.
- ❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the **【Job Reset】** key. The file will be deleted.
- ❒ For details about setting printer drivers, see the printer driver Help. You can also print or delete a Hold Print file from Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- ❒ For details about **[User ID]**, see p.97 "Printing from the User ID Screen".

Deleting Hold Print files

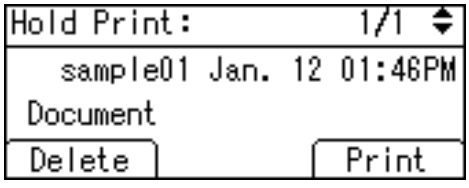
1 **Press [Prt.Jobs].**

2 **Select [Hold Print Jobs] using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key, and then press [Job List].**

A list of Hold Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3 **Select the file you want to delete using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key, and then press [Delete].**



The confirmation screen appears.

4 **Press [Delete].**

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press **[Cancel]**.

Stored Print

Use this function to store a file in the printer, and then print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.

Jobs are not deleted after they are printed, so the same job need not be resent in order to print multiple copies.

Important

❒ A Stored Print file cannot be stored if:

- the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
- the file contains over 1,000 pages.
- sent or stored files in the printer contain over 3,000 pages in total.

Note

❒ If a Stored Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.

❒ Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents in the printer remain. However, the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** or **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]** settings are applied first.

❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Stored Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected from the application's **[Print]** dialog box, more prints than intended may be produced.

❒ Stored Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select **[Stored Print Jobs]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Stored Print files.

❒ If stored files have similar and long file names, recognizing the file you want to print on the display panel may be difficult. Print the file you want to print either by checking the user ID or the time the file is sent, or by changing the file name to something that can be recognized easily.

❒ If you enter the document name on the printer driver's **[Details...]**, that name appears on the display panel.

Reference

For details about the error log on the display panel, see p.103 "Checking the Error Log".

For details about the **[Auto Delete Temporary Jobs]** and **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]**, see p.125 "HD Management".

Printing a Stored Print file

The following procedure describes how to print a Stored Print file with the RPCS printer driver. For information about how to print a Stored Print file with the PostScript 3 printer driver, see Postscript 3 Supplement.

Important

❒ Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.

1 Configure the Stored Print in the printer driver's properties.

You can select two ways for Stored Print:

- **[Stored Print]**
  Stores the file in the printer and print it later using the control panel.
- **[Store and Normal Print]** (or **[Store and Print]**)
  Prints the file at once and also stores the file in the printer.

For details about configuring the printer drivers, see the relevant Help files.

2 Click [Details...], and then enter a User ID in the [User ID:] box.

You can also set a password. The same password must be entered when printing or deleting.

You can also set a file name. The file name you set will be displayed on the printer's Job List screen.

3 Start printing from the application's [Print] dialog box.

The Stored Print job is sent to the printer.

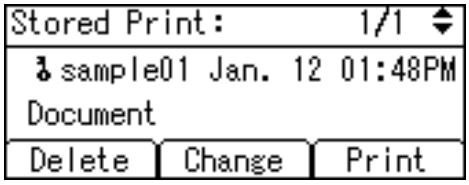
4 On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

5 Select [Stored Print Jobs] using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key, and then press [Job List].

A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

You can print files also by pressing **[User ID]**.

6 **Select the file you want to print using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key, and then press [Print].**



The confirmation screen appears.

If you set a password in the printer driver, a password confirmation screen appears. Enter the password.

7 **Press [Print].**

The Stored Print file is printed.

Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

Note

- ❒ When multiple files are selected without setting a quantity, one set less than the minimum number of all settings is applied. If the least number of settings is one set, all selected files will be printed at one set.
- ❒ When the number of set quantity is changed, the changed quantity is applied to all selected files.
- ❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the 【**Job Reset**】 key. A Stored Print file is not deleted even if **[JobReset]** is pressed.
- ❒ The Stored Print file that sent to the printer is not deleted unless you delete a file or select **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]**.
- ❒ You can set or delete a password after sending files to the printer. Select the file and press **[Change]** in the Print Job List screen. To set a password, enter the new password. To delete the password, leave the password box blank on entering or confirming the new password, and press the 【**OK**】 key.
- ❒ For details about setting printer drivers, see the printer driver Help. You can also print or delete a Stored Print file from Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Reference

For details about the **[Auto Delete Stored Jobs]**, see p.125 “HD Management”.

For details about **[User ID]**, see p.97 “Printing from the User ID Screen”.

Deleting Stored Print files

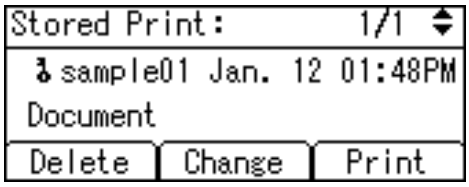
1. **Press [Prt.Jobs].**

2. **Select [Stored Print Jobs] using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Job List].**

A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. **Select the file you want to delete using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Delete].**



The delete confirmation screen will appear.

If you set the password in the printer driver, enter the password to delete.

If you forget your password, ask your network administrator for help.

4. **Press [Delete].**

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press **[Cancel]**.

Printing from the User ID Screen

This describes how to print the files saved in the printer from the User ID screen.

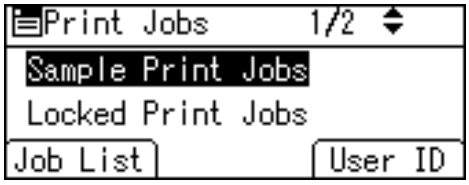
Printing the Selected Print Job

Important

❒ If you print a Sample, Locked, or Hold Print file, the print file saved in the printer is deleted after printing is complete.

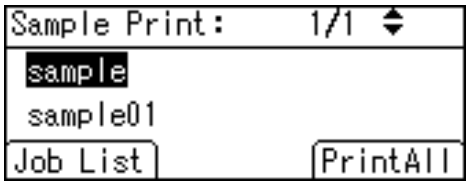
1 **On the initial screen, press [Prt.Jobs].**

2 **Press [User ID].**



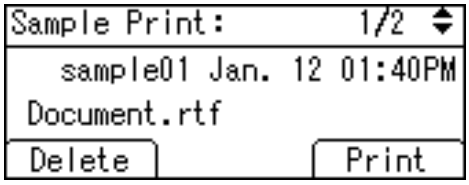
A list of user IDs whose files are stored in the printer appears.

3 **Select the user ID whose file you want to print using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Job List].**



The print job list of the selected user ID appears.

4 **Select the file you want to print using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [Print].**



The confirmation screen appears.

5 **Press [Print].**

The selected file is printed.

Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

Reference

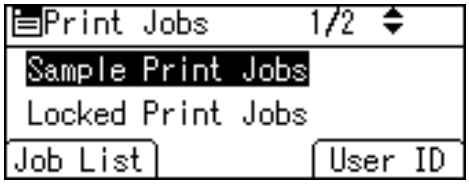
For details about printing each type of print job, see the followings:

p.82 “Sample Print”
p.86 “Locked Print”
p.90 “Hold Print”
p.93 “Stored Print”

Printing All Print Jobs

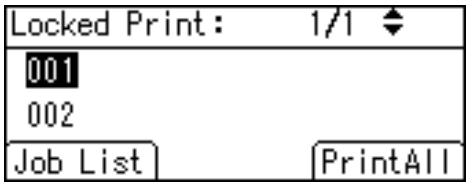
1 **On the initial screen, press [Prt.Jobs].**

2 **Select a type of print jobs you want to print using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [User ID].**



A list of user IDs whose files are stored in the printer appears.

3 **Select the user ID whose file you want to print using the [▲], [▼] key, and then press [PrintAll].**



The confirmation screen appears.

4 **Press [Print].**

The selected files are printed.

To cancel printing, press **[Cancel]**.

Note

- ❒ After printing is completed, Sample Print, Locked Print, and Hold Print files are deleted.
- ❒ You cannot select a print job that is not stored under the selected user ID.
- ❒ When printing multiple Sample Print files without specifying the number of sets on the confirmation screen, one set less than the least number of set specified on the computer is applied for every selected document. If the number of sets specified on the computer is "1", one set each is printed for every document.
- ❒ When printing multiple Stored Print files without specifying the number of sets on the confirmation screen, the least number of set specified on the computer is applied for every selected document.
- ❒ If you select **[Locked Print Jobs]**, enter the correct password. If there are multiple passwords, the printer prints only files that correspond to the entered password.
- ❒ If you select Stored Print files, and some of these require a password, the printer prints files that correspond to the entered password and files that do not require a password.

Reference

For details about printing each type of print job, see the followings:

p.82 "Sample Print"

p.86 "Locked Print"

p.90 "Hold Print"

p.93 "Stored Print"

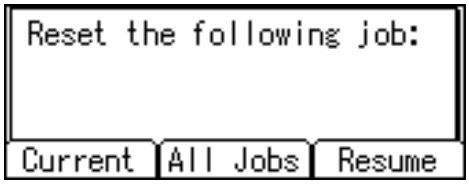
Canceling a Print Job

You can cancel printing from either the printer or a client computer. Since canceling procedures vary depending on the print job status, check the job status and cancel printing according to the following procedure.

Canceling a Print Job Using the Control Panel

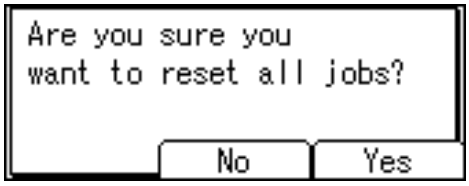
1. **Press the 【Job Reset】 key.**
   A confirmation message appears.

2. **Press [Current].**



   To resume printing jobs, press **[Resume]**.

3. **Press [Yes] to cancel the print job.**



   Press **[No]** to return to the previous display.

Windows - Canceling a Print Job from the computer

You can cancel a print job from the computer if transferring print jobs is not completed.

1 **Double-click the printer icon on the Windows task tray.**

A window appears, showing all print jobs currently queued for printing. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

2 **Select the name of the job you want to cancel.**

3 **On the [Document] menu, click [Cancel Printing].**

Note

- ❒ If the printer is shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.
- ❒ If the printer is connected to the computer using a parallel cable, sent print jobs may be canceled if **[JobReset]** is pressed while "Waiting..." is displayed on the control panel. After the interval set in **[I/O Timeout]** in Printer Features has passed, the next print job can be sent. A print job sent from a different client computer will not be canceled in this case.
- ❒ In Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0, click **[Cancel]** on the **[Document]** menu.
- ❒ In Windows 95/98/Me/2000 or Windows NT 4.0, you can also open the print job queue window by double-clicking the printer icon in the **[Printers]** printer window (the **[Printers and Faxes]** window under Windows XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2).
- ❒ You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue for a few pages after you press **[JobReset]**.
- ❒ A print job containing a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

Mac OS - Canceling a Print Job from the computer

1 **Double-click the printer icon on the desktop.**

A window appears showing all print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

Under Mac OS X, start Print Center.

2 **Select the name of the job you want to cancel.**

3 **Click the pause icon, and then click the trash icon.**

Note

- ❒ If the printer is shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.
- ❒ If the printer is connected to the computer using a parallel cable, sent print jobs may be canceled if **[JobReset]** is pressed while "Waiting..." is displayed on the control panel. After the interval set in **[I/O Timeout]** in Printer Features has passed, the next print job can be sent. A print job sent from a different client computer will not be canceled in this case.
- ❒ You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue for a few pages after you press **[JobReset]**.
- ❒ A print job containing a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

Checking the Error Log

If files could not be stored due to printing errors, identify the cause of the errors by checking the error log on the control panel.

Important

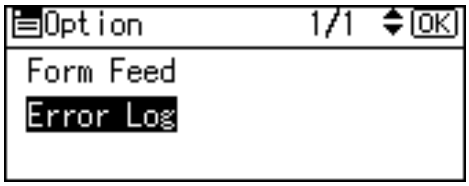
❒ The most recent 30 errors are stored in the error log. If a new error is added when there are 30 errors already stored, the oldest error is deleted. However, if the oldest error belongs to one of the following print jobs, it is not deleted. The error is stored separately until the number of those errors reaches 30. You can check any of these print jobs for error log information.

- Sample Print
- Locked Print
- Hold Print
- Stored Print

❒ If the main power switch is turned off, the log is deleted.

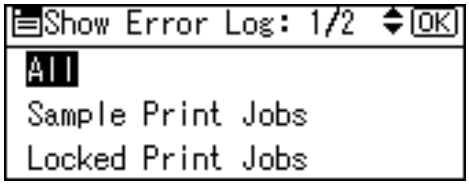
1 **Press [Option].**

2 **Select [Error Log] using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

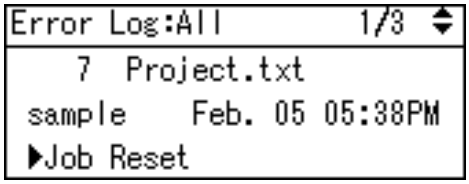


3 **Select a type of print jobs using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

If you select **[All]**, all error logs appears.



4 **Select the error log you want to check using the 【▲】, 【▼】 key.**



Note

❒ Press the 【**Menu**】 key until the initial screen appears after checking the log.

❒ To print files that appear in the error log, resend them after stored files have been printed or deleted.

Collate

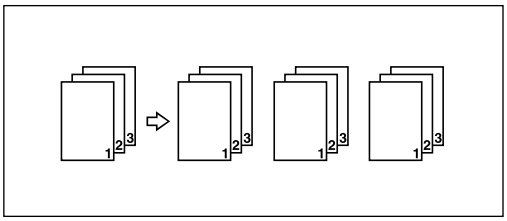
When printing multiple documents such as handouts for meetings, you can separate sets into order. This function is known as “Collate”. Collate stores data transmitted from a computer in the printer's memory or hard disk drive. The following explains the two types of Collate:

Important

❒ Up to 1,000 pages can be sorted.

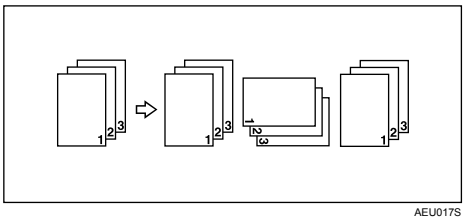
❖ **Collate**

Printed output is assembled as sets in sequential order.



❖ **Rotating Collate**

Every other print set is rotated by 90 degrees.
The Rotating Collate function requires two paper trays containing paper that is of the same size but set in different orientations.



AEU017S

❖ **When Rotate Collate is cancelled**

If the following functions are selected, Collate will be applied even if Rotating Collate is selected:

- If jobs containing pages of various sizes are set.
- If an output tray is specified.
- If custom size paper is set.

Note

- ❒ Set Collate and Rotating Collate when using the RPCS printer driver.
- ❒ If Auto Continue occurs while the first set is being printed, Collate will be cancelled.
- ❒ If forced printing occurs while the first set is being printed, Collate will be cancelled.
- ❒ When specifying Collate in the printer driver settings, make sure a collate option is not selected in the application's print settings. If a collate option is selected, printing will not be as intended.
- ❒ If Rotating Collate is selected, printing is slower than with the other collate functions.
- ❒ For details about printing methods, see the printer driver Help.

Spool Printing

With Spool Printing, the print data is saved in the hard disk before printing. To use this function, set it from the menu. See p.217 “Remote Maintenance by telnet”.

Important

- ❒ Use the “spoolsw clear job” telnet command to clear a spooled print job. Do not turn off the printer or computer while a print job is being spooled and the Data In is flashing. Print jobs that are interrupted in this way remain on the printer’s hard disk and will finish printing out when the printer is turned back on.
- ❒ The Spool Printing function is available for data received using diprint, lpr, ipp, ftp, and sftp (TCP/IP (IPv6)).
- ❒ When using diprint, the Spool Printing function cannot be used with bidirectional communication.
- ❒ The domain reserved for spool printing is about 1 GB.
- ❒ When Spool Printing is on, the size of a single print job cannot exceed 500 MB.
- ❒ When receiving jobs from multiple computers, the printer can spool a maximum of ten lpr jobs, and only one diprint, ipp, ftp, sftp, or smb job. If the printer’s spooling capacity is exceeded, newer jobs cannot be printed. You must wait before sending further jobs.

Note

- ❒ Printing the first page with Spool Printing will be slow.
- ❒ The computer requires less print processing time when large amounts of data are spooled.
- ❒ Stored spool jobs can be viewed or deleted using Web Image Monitor.
- ❒ The list of spool jobs cannot be viewed from the printer’s control panel.

Reference

For information about the “spoolsw clear job” command on the telnet, see p.217 “Remote Maintenance by telnet”.

Setting Spool Printing

Spool printing settings can be made using telnet or Web Image Monitor.

- Using Web Image Monitor
  In **[System]** on the **[Configuration]** menu, click **[Active]** in **[Spool Printing]**.
- Using telnet
  Enter "spoolsw spool on".

Note

❒ For details about Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Reference

For details about "spoolsw spool on", see p.217 "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Viewing or Deleting Spooled Jobs Using Web Image Monitor

Follow the procedure below to check or delete spooled jobs using Web Image Monitor.

1. **Open a Web browser.**
2. **Enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.**
   Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.
3. **Click [Login].**
   The window for entering the login user name and password appears.
4. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**
   Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
5. **In the menu area, click [Job].**
   A submenu will appear.
6. **On the [Printer] menu, click [Spool Printing].**
   A list of spooled jobs appears.
7. **To delete a job, select the check box of the job you want to delete, and then click [Delete].**
   The selected job is deleted.
8. **Click [Logout].**
9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

Note

❒ For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Printing with the Folding Finisher

You can fold printed paper by installing the optional folding finisher. Be sure to observe the following precautions when using the optional folding finisher.

Important

- ❒ Make option settings for the machine using the printer driver when bidirectional communication is disabled.
- ❒ Be sure to set the paper size and paper orientation in the printer driver when using combined printing (layout).
- ❒ If you are feeding paper from the bypass tray, you cannot use the folding finisher function.

❖ **Connecting to the optional folding finisher unit**

You cannot use the optional folding finisher unit under the following conditions or settings:

- The optional folding finisher unit is not attached to this machine.
- The bypass tray is selected for the feeding tray.
- The paper size and orientation is not properly set.
- **[Translucent]** and **[Film]** is selected for the paper type.
- The Folding Finisher Tray is not selected as the paper output tray.
- The **[Normal Print]** is not selected as the printing method.

Note

- ❒ Depending on the application, print settings may not be enabled and printed output may not be as expected.
- ❒ When setting Collate in the printer driver, make sure that the Collate check box is cleared in the application's **[Print]** dialog box. If Collate is enabled in the application, printing will not be as intended.
- ❒ When printing restarts after removing jammed paper, the printing position may be different, depending on the location of the jam.
  - If the paper jam occurred in the optional finisher, printing will restart from the top page of the data currently being printed, or from the page where the paper jam occurred.
  - If the paper jam occurred in the machine, printing will restart from the page where the paper jam occurred.
  - Even if the paper jam occurred in the machine, the error will not be cleared unless the cover of the finisher is opened and closed.

Reference

p.53 “If Bidirectional Communication is Disabled”

“Removing Misfed Paper”, Hardware Guide

The printer driver Help

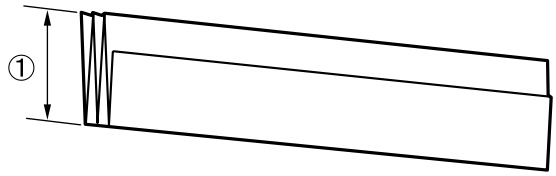
Fold Types

This section explains fold types to take when using the folding finisher.

You can select **[Fan Fold]** and **[Do not fold]** on. Types of fold are as follows:

❖ **Fan Fold**

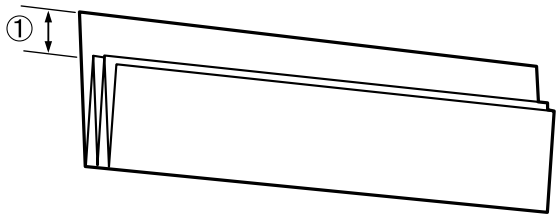
Alternating folds are applied horizontally relative to the paper direction. You can select one of the following widths for the fold: 140, 170, 210, or 297 mm ($8^1/_2$, 9, 11, or 12 inches).



ATW006S

①: Fold width

When **[Fan Fold with Margin]** is selected, paper is folded so as to have a binding margin. You can specify the following widths for the margin: 35 to 40 mm (1.38 to 1.58 inch).



BAL069S

①: Margin

❖ **No Fold (Straight output)**

No folding is applied to sheets that are output from the Folding Finisher Tray.

Folding Finisher Cautions

This section explains about the fold precautions.

❖ Folding type and orientation

Fold Type	Paper Size
Fan Fold	A0, B1, A1, B2, A2, B3, A3, B4, 36″ × 48″, 34″ × 44″, 30″ × 42″, 24″ × 36″, 22″ × 34″, 21″ × 30″, 18″ × 24″, 17″ × 22″, 12″ × 18″, 11″ × 17″, 8 1/2″ × 14″, 8 1/2″ × 13″ Custom Size: • Less than 594 mm (23.4″) in width, and between 320 to 2000 mm (12.6″ to 78.8″) in length. The number of folded surfaces cannot exceed 10 (i.e., 9 folds). • Greater than 594 mm (23.4″) and less than 841 mm (33.2″) in width, and between 320 to 3600 mm (12.6″ to 141.8″) in length. The number of folded surfaces cannot exceed 30 (i.e., 29 folds). • Greater than 841 mm (33.2″) in width, and between 320 to 6000 mm (12.6″ to 236.3″) in length. The number of folded surfaces cannot exceed 30 (i.e., 29 folds).
Not Fold	A0, B1, A1, B2, A2, B3, A3, B4, A4, 36″ × 48″, 34″ × 44″, 30″ × 42″, 24″ × 36″, 22″ × 34″, 21″ × 30″, 18″ × 24″, 17″ × 22″, 12″ × 18″, 11″ × 17″, 9″ × 12″, 8 1/2″ × 14″, 8 1/2″ × 13″, 8 1/2″ × 11″ Custom Size: between 210 to 914.4 mm (8.27″ to 36″) in width, and between 257 to 15000 mm (10.2″ to 590.6″) in length.

❖ When the folding is cancelled

- When the output is from the bypass tray
- When the folding type and orientation is not properly set.
- When a paper type that cannot be folded is selected.
- When the Folding Finisher Tray is not selected for the paper output tray.
- When **[Normal Print]** is not selected for the printing method.
- When less than 320 mm is specified for the length of the fan fold paper.

Note

❒ If the optional folding finisher is connected but the fold settings are incorrect, you might not be able to make settings for the optional device using the printer driver.

❒ Printing starts only after jobs from other functions (such as the copier) that are using the folding finisher have finished.

❒ Depending on the application you are using, printer settings might not be applied and printing might not be as required.

4. Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

Menu Chart

This section explains how to change the default settings of the printer and provides information about the parameters included in each menu.

❖ **Counter**
Displays the amount of paper remaining on the paper roll.

❖ **Memory Erase Status**
Displays data status inside the memory.

Note

❒ This menu can be selected only when the optional security card is installed.

❖ **Paper Input**

Menu
Paper Size:Bypass
Paper Size:Tray 1
Paper Size:Tray 2
Paper Size:Tray 3
Paper Type:Bypass Tray
Paper Type:Tray 1
Paper Type:Tray 2
Paper Type:Tray 3
Auto Tray Select
Tray Priority

❖ **Maintenance**

Menu
General Settings
Timer Settings
HD Management

❖ List/Test Print

Menu
Multiple Lists
Config. Page
Error Log
Network Summary
Menu List
PS Config./Font Page
PDF Config./Font Page
Hex Dump

❖ System

Menu
Print Error Report
Auto Continue
Memory Overflow
Printer Language
Sub Paper Size
Default Printer Lang.
Energy Saver 1
Energy Saver 2
Memory Usage
Spool Printing
Auto Email Notify

❖ Print Settings

Menu
Machine Modes
PS Menu
PDF Menu

❖ Security Options

Menu
Extend Auth. Management
Extended Security
Service Mode Lock
Firmware Version
Network Security Level
Auto Erase Memory Setting
Erase All Memory
Transfer Log Setting

Note

❒ **[Service Mode Lock]** may not appear depending on the setting of the printer.

❒ **[Auto Erase Memory Setting]** and **[Erase All Memory]** appear when the optional security card is installed.

❖ Host Interface

Menu
I/O Buffer
I/O Timeout
Network
IEEE 802.11b
USB Settings

Note

❒ **[IEEE 802.11b]** appears when the optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❖ Language

Menu
English
Français
Deutsch
Italiano
Español
Nederlands
Português
Русский

Paper Input Menu

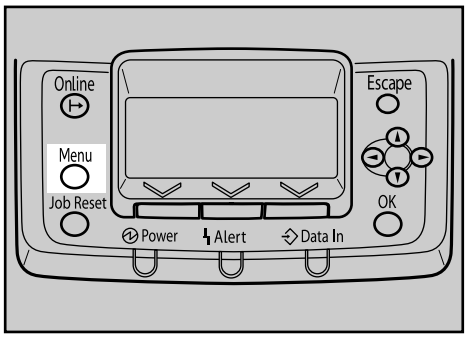
This section explains about paper settings on the Paper Input menu such as paper sizes and types on each tray.

Changing the Paper Input Menu

Automatic tray selection

Follow the procedure below to change the automatic tray selection setting.

1. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**



BAL051S

2. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Paper Input], and then press the 【OK】 key.**
3. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Auto Tray Select], and then press the 【OK】 key.**
4. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the tray you want to use, and then press the 【OK】 key.**
5. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [On], and then press the 【OK】 key.**

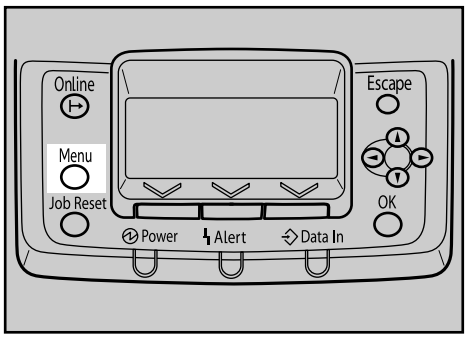
   Wait for one second. The Auto Tray Select screen appears.
6. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**

   The initial screen appears.

Tray Priority

Follow the procedure below to change the tray priority.

1. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**



BAL051S

2. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Paper Input], and then press the 【OK】 key.**

3. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Tray Priority], and then press the 【OK】 key.**

4. **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select a tray you want to use, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

   Wait for one second. The Paper Input screen appears.

5. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**

   The initial screen appears.

Paper Input Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Paper Input menu.

❖ **Paper Size:Bypass**

You can specify the paper size for bypass tray.

220-240V

A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, B1 JIS, B2 JIS, B3 JIS, B4 JIS, 36 × 48, 34 × 44, 30 × 42, 24 × 36, 22 × 34, 18 × 24, 17 × 22, 12 × 18, 11 × 17, 9 × 12, $8^1/_2 \times 14$, $8^1/_2 \times 11$, Custom Size

120V

36 × 48, 34 × 44, 30 × 42, 24 × 36, 22 × 34, 18 × 24, 17 × 22, 12 × 18, 11 × 17, 9 × 12, $8^1/_2 \times 14$, $8^1/_2 \times 11$, A0, A1, A2, A3, A4, B1 JIS, B2 JIS, B3 JIS, B4 JIS, Custom Size

Note

❒ 220-240V Default: A4

❒ 120V Default: $8^1/_2 \times 11$

❖ **Paper Size:Tray 1, Paper Size:Tray 2**

Specify the paper roll width for Tray 1 and 2.

220-240V

841 mm, 594 mm, 420 mm, 297 mm, 210 mm, 728 mm, 515 mm, 364 mm, 257 mm, 880 mm, 800 mm, 707 mm, 680 mm, 660 mm, 625 mm, 620 mm, 490 mm, 440 mm, 34 inch, 22 inch, 17 inch, 11 inch, 8.5 inch, 36 inch, 24 inch, 18 inch, 12 inch, 9 inch, 30 inch

120V

34 inch, 22 inch, 17 inch, 11 inch, 8.5 inch, 36 inch, 24 inch, 18 inch, 12 inch, 9 inch, 30 inch, 841 mm, 594 mm, 420 mm, 297 mm, 210 mm, 728 mm, 515 mm, 364 mm, 257 mm, 880 mm, 800 mm, 707 mm, 680 mm, 660 mm, 625 mm, 620 mm, 490 mm, 440 mm

Note

❒ 220-240V Default: 841 mm (Tray 1), 420 mm (Tray 2)

❒ 120V Default: 36 inch (Tray 1), 18 inch (Tray 2)

❖ **Paper Size:Tray 3**

You can specify the paper size for Tray 3.

220-240V

A3 ▯, A4 ▯, B4JIS ▯, 12 × 18 ▯, 11 × 17 ▯, 8 1/2 × 14 ▯, 8 1/2 × 13 ▯, 8 1/2 × 11 ▯

120V

12 × 18 ▯, 11 × 17 ▯, 8 1/2 × 14 ▯, 8 1/2 × 13 ▯, 8 1/2 × 11 ▯, A3 ▯, A4 ▯, B4JIS ▯

Note

❒ 220-240V Default: A4 ▯

❒ 120V Default: 12 × 18 ▯

❒ This menu appears when the optional cut paper tray is installed.

❖ **Paper Type:Bypass Tray**

No Display (Plain Paper), Recycled Paper, Translucent Paper, Film

Note

❒ Default : No Display (Plain Paper)

❒ For details about the types of paper that can be loaded in the bypass tray, see Hardware Guide.

❒ Be sure to set a paper type using the control panel. If you do not set it, the printing result might not be proper.

❖ **Paper Type:Tray 1, Paper Type:Tray 2**

No Display (Plain Paper), Recycled Paper, Translucent Paper, Film

Note

❒ Default : No Display (Plain Paper)

❒ For details about the types of paper that can be loaded in each tray, see Hardware Guide.

❒ Be sure to set a paper type using the control panel. If you do not set it, the printing result might not be proper.

❖ **Paper Type:Tray 3**

No Display (Plain Paper), Recycled Paper

Note

❒ Default: No Display (Plain Paper)

❒ For details about the types of paper that can be loaded in the bypass tray, see Hardware Guide.

❒ Be sure to set a paper type using the control panel. If you do not set it, the printing result might not be proper.

❒ This menu appears when the optional cut paper tray is installed.

❖ **Auto Tray Select**

You can select whether to assign each tray to automatically print the paper size and type set by printer driver.

Note

❒ Default : On

❒ When using custom size paper, if automatic tray selection is enabled, the size selected on the control panel has priority. If this setting is disabled, the size selected from the printer driver has priority.

❒ Only installed trays appear on the display panel.

❒ You can select multiple trays.

❒ If you need to have a tray locked, you must select the tray using both printer driver and control panel.

❖ **Tray Priority**

You can set a tray to be checked first when automatic tray selection is enabled from the printer driver. The tray selected here is used when no tray is selected for a print job.

Note

❒ Default : Tray 1

❒ Only installed trays appear on the display panel.

❒ It is recommended that you load paper of the size and orientation you use most frequently in the tray selected in this setting.

Note

❒ JIS stands for “Japanese Industrial Standard”.

Maintenance Menu

You can set printing conditions such as density and calibration, and printer management such as deleting temporary print jobs from the hard disk.

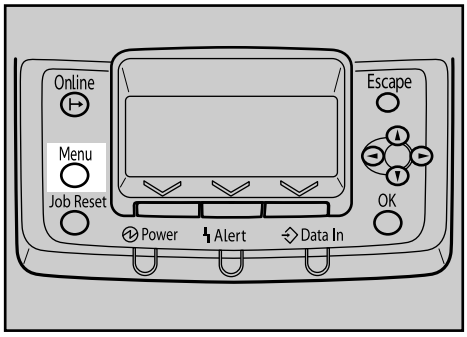
Changing the Maintenance Menu

This section explains changing the Maintenance menu using examples.

Automatic deletion of temporary jobs in the hard disk

Follow the procedure below to set automatic deletion of temporary jobs stored in the hard disk.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



BAL051S

2 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select [Maintenance], and then press the 【OK】 key.

3 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select [HD Management], and then press the 【OK】 key.

4 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs], and then press the 【OK】 key.

5 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select [On], and then press the 【OK】 key.

6 Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to set automatic deletion timer in hours between 1 through 200.

7 Press the 【OK】 key.

Wait for one second. The hard disk management screen appears.

8 Press the 【Menu】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Maintenance Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Maintenance menu.

General Settings

❖ **Paper Thickness:Paper Tray, Paper Thickness:Bypass**

You can use this setting to specify one of five paper thicknesses for plain paper, recycled paper, translucent paper, and film.

Note

❒ Default: level 3 (medium)

❖ **Menu Protect**

You can select whether or not to protect menu. When you enable this setting, specify protection level.

- Level 1
- Level 2
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Level 2

❒ If you would like to lower the protection level, disable this setting or select Level 1.

❒ You may not be able to change this setting depending on the setting of the printer.

❖ **List/Test Print Lock**

You can select whether or not to prohibit List/Test printing.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ You may not be able to change this setting depending on the setting of the printer.

❖ **Unit of Measure**

You can select whether to use "mm" or "inch" when specifying the size of custom sized paper.

- mm
- inch

Note

❒ 220-240V Default: mm

❒ 120V Default: inch

❖ **Panel Key Sound**

You can select whether or not to sound the beeper when the control panel is pressed.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **Warm-up Beeper**

You can select whether or not to sound the beeper when the printer has completed a warm-up process.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **Display Contrast**

You can specify the density of the display.

❖ **Key Repeat**

You can specify whether or not to scroll the display panel when the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key is held down. When you enable this setting, specify the scroll speed. (If repeat time is set to "Long", scroll speed becomes slow.)

- Do not Repeat
- Normal
- Repeat Time: Medium
- Repeat Time: Long

Note

❒ Default: Normal

❖ **Fine Ratio Adjustment**

When using the folding finisher, you can use this setting to specify a paper type and fine ratio.

- -1.0 to +1.0 %

Note

❒ Default: 0.0 %

❖ **Fold Width Fine Adjustment**

When the folding function is enabled, you can use this setting to specify the folding width when the folding function is enabled.

- -6.0 to +6.0 mm (-0.24 to +0.24 inch)

Note

❒ Default: 0.0 mm

❒ This menu is available only when the optional folding finisher is installed.

❖ **Margin Fold Margin Adjust.**

When the folding function is available, you can use this setting to adjust the margin fold offset value.

- 35 to 40 mm (1.38 to 1.58 inch)

Note

❒ Default: 40 mm (1.58 inch)

❒ This menu is available only when the optional folding finisher is installed.

Timer Settings

❖ **Auto Reset Timer**

Specify whether or not to cancel settings made if no operation has been performed for a certain period of time while changing configuration using the control panel. When set to on, specify how long the printer is to wait before resetting configuration.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **Set Date**

You can set the date of the printer's internal clock using the [▲] or [▼] key.

❖ **Set Time**

You can set the time of the printer's internal clock using the [▲] or [▼] key.

HD Management

Specify the settings related to deletion of data saved on the hard disk.

❖ **Delete All Temporary Jobs**
Use this function to delete all temporary documents saved on the hard disk (Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print data) at once.

❖ **Delete All Stored Jobs**
Use this function to delete all Stored Print data saved on the hard disk at once.

❖ **Auto Delete Temporary Jobs**
Specify whether or not to automatically delete temporary documents saved on the hard disk (Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print data). When set to on, specify how long the printer is to wait before deleting the documents.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ If you enable this setting, specify the timer in hours. (Default: 8 hours)

❖ **Auto Delete Stored Jobs**
Specify whether or not to automatically delete Stored Print data saved on the hard disk. When set to on, specify how long the printer is to wait before deleting the documents.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❒ If you enable this setting, specify the timer in days. (Default: 3 days)

List/Test Print Menu

You can print lists showing configurations on printer or the paper printings. Also, you can check the types and characters of all the printable fonts.

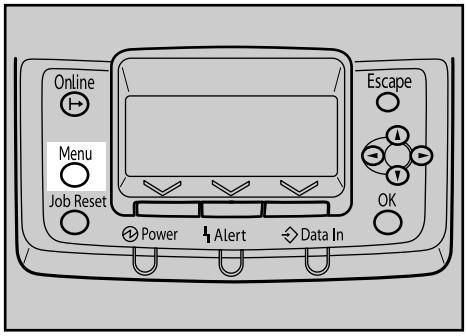
Printing a Configuration Page

Follow the procedure below to print the configuration page.

Important

❒ The configuration page is printed on A4 or Letter ($8^1/_2$″×11″) size paper, so load them in the same paper tray.

1 **Press the【Menu】key.**



BAL051S

2 **Press the【▼】or【▲】key to select [List/Test Print], and then press the【OK】key.**

3 **Press the【▼】or【▲】key to select [Config. Page], and then press the【OK】key.**

After the configuration page is printed out, the screen returns to List/Test Print menu.

4 **Press the【Menu】key.**

The initial screen appears.

Interpreting the Configuration Page

❖ **System Reference**

❖ **Unit Number**
Shows the serial number assigned to the board by its manufacturer.

❖ **Total Memory**
The total amount of SDRAM installed on the printer is displayed.

❖ **Total Counter**
The total number of pages printed by the printer to date is displayed.

❖ **Firmware Version**

- Printer
  Shows the version number of the printer controller firmware.
- Engine
  Shows the version number of the printer engine firmware.
- NIB
  Shows the version number of the network interface board.

❖ **Device Connection**
Shows the names of device options installed in the printer.

❖ **HDD: Font / Macro Download**
Shows the hard disk status

❖ **Printer Language**
Shows the version number of the printer language.

❖ **Connection Equipment**
Shows the options attached to the printer.

❖ **Paper Input**
Shows the current Paper Input settings.

Reference
For details, see p.116 “Paper Input Menu”.

❖ **Maintenance**
Shows the current Maintenance settings.

Reference
For details, see p.121 “Maintenance Menu”.

❖ **System**
Shows the current System settings.

Reference
For details, see p.130 “System Menu”.

❖ **Machine Modes**
Shows the current Machine Modes settings.

Reference
For details, see p.134 “Print Settings Menu”.

❖ **PS Menu**
Shows the current PS settings.

Reference
For details, see p.134 “Print Settings Menu”.

❖ **PDF Menu**
Shows the current PDF settings.

Reference
For details, see p.134 “Print Settings Menu”.

❖ **Host Interface**
Shows the current Host Interface settings.
When DHCP is active on the network, the IPv4 address, subnet mask and gateway address appear in parentheses.

Reference
For details, see p.143 “Host Interface Menu”.

❖ **Interface Information**
Interface information is displayed.

List/Test Print Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the List/Test Print menu.

❖ **Multiple Lists**
You can print the configuration page and error log, network summary and supply list.

❖ **Config. Page**
You can print the current configuration of the printer.

❖ **Error Log**
You can print an error report.

❖ **Network Summary**
You can print the network device status.

❖ **Menu List**
You can print a menu list showing all available menus.

❖ **PS Config./Font Page**
You can print the current configuration and installed PostScript font list.

❖ **PDF Config./Font Page**
You can print the current configuration and installed PDF font list.

❖ **Hex Dump**
You can print the data sent by the computer using Hex Dump.

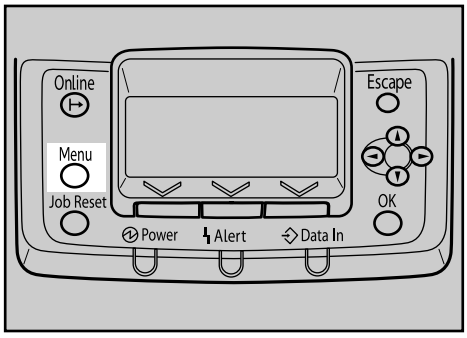
System Menu

The System menu allows you to set the printer's basic functions. Although you can operate the printer using the default settings, you can also change its settings to better suit your printing needs. Changes made to settings remain effective after power off.

Changing the System Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the settings for Energy Saver Timer.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



BAL051S

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [System], and then press the 【OK】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Energy Saver 2], and then press the 【OK】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Energy Saver Timer], and then enter the 【OK】 key.

5 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the lead time needed to switch to the Energy Saver mode.

6 Press the 【OK】 key.

Wait for one second. The Energy Saver 2 screen appears.

7 Press the 【Menu】 key.

The initial screen appears.

System Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the System menu.

❖ **Print Error Report**

Select whether or not to print an error report when a printer error or memory error occurs.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Auto Continue**

Specify whether or not to continue printing after a system error. When you enable this setting, specify how long the printer is to display error before resuming print.

- Off
- Immediate
- 1 minute
- 5 minutes
- 10 minutes
- 15 minutes

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ When this setting is set to on, and a certain error occurs in the printer while printing out, the job might be cancelled. When a job is cancelled due to error, the printer automatically begins the next job in the queue.

❖ **Memory Overflow**

You can specify whether or not to print a memory overflow error report.

- Do not Print
- Error Information

Note

❒ Default: Do not Print

❖ **Printer Language**
You can specify the printer language.

- Auto
- PS
- PDF

Note
❒ Default: Auto

❖ **Sub Paper Size**
Specify whether or not to use paper of the alternate size automatically, if paper of the specified size is not loaded. When this setting is set to off, the printer uses paper of any size loaded in the specified tray.

- Auto
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off

❖ **Default Printer Lang.**
Select the printer language to use when the printer fails to detect the printer language.

- PS
- PDF

Note
❒ Default: PS

❖ **Energy Saver 1**
Select whether or not to switch to Energy Saver 1 mode.

- On
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off
❒ When set to on, the printer switches to Energy Saver 1 mode after printing is complete. Electric power consumption is greater than in Energy Saver 2 mode, but the printer returns to Ready mode after a while.

❖ **Energy Saver 2**
In Energy Saver mode, electric power consumption is reduced.

❖ **Energy Saver Timer**
Specify the lead time needed to switch to Energy Saver mode.

- 1 minute
- 5 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes
- 45 minutes
- 60 minutes

Note
❒ Default: 15 minutes

❖ **Memory Usage**
Select memory to be used from Font Priority or Frame Priority.

- Font Priority
- Frame Priority

Note
❒ Default : Font Priority

❖ **Spool Printing**
Specify whether or not to complete spooling before starting to print.

- On
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off
❒ Spooling stores a sent print job temporarily in the printer, and then prints it.

❖ **Auto Email Notify**
Specify whether or not to send an error message to a preset e-mail address when an error occurs in the printer.

- On
- Off

Important
❒ After changing the setting, turn off the power of the printer briefly, and then turn it on again.

Note
❒ Default: On
❒ For information, see Web Image Monitor Help.

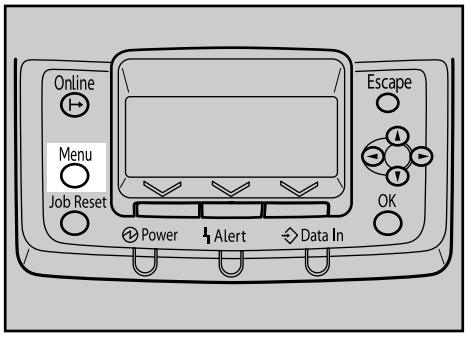
Print Settings Menu

You can set conditions for printing.

Changing the Print Settings Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the Bypass Tray Priority.

1 Press the 【Menu】 key.



BAL051S

2 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Print Settings], and then press the 【OK】 key.

3 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Machine Modes], and then press the 【OK】 key.

4 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Bypass Tray Priority], and then enter the 【OK】 key.

5 Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the desired setting item, and then press the 【OK】 key.

Wait for one second. The Machine Modes screen appears.

6 Press the 【Menu】 key.

The initial screen appears.

Print Settings Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Print Settings menu.

❖ Machine Modes

❖ Copies

Specify the number of copies to print.
If the number of copies to print is specified by command or the printer driver, this setting is overridden.

- 1 to 999

❖ Edge to Edge Print

Select to whether or not to print using the whole area of paper, leaving no edge borders.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ Output Tray

Specify output tray to be used when the output tray is not specified in the print data.

- Upper Paper Exit
- Lower Paper Exit

Note

❒ Default: Upper Paper Exit

❖ Rotate by 180 Degrees

Select whether or not to rotate image by 180 degrees when printing.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default : Off

❖ Blank Page Print

Select whether or not to print blank pages.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: On

❖ **Bypass Tray Priority**

When paper size/type setting does not match between the printer driver and the printer, you can select which setting is used.

- Driver/Command
- Machine Settings

Note

❒ Default: Driver/Command

❖ **Tray Switching**

Select whether or not to automatically switch to a suitable tray, when the setting of the current tray does not match the paper size/type specified by the printer driver.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Collate Type**

You can select the Collate Type that is automatically applied when the Collate function is enabled

- Collate
- Rotating Collate

Note

❒ Default: Collate

❒ If you want to using this function, contact your service representative.

❖ **PS Menu**

You can set conditions when using PostScript for printing.

❖ **Data Format**

Select the data format from Binary Data or TBCP.
This setting is effective when using a parallel, USB, or EtherTalk connection.
When using a parallel or USB connection, the print job is canceled if binary data is sent from the printer driver.
When using an Ethernet connection, the print job is canceled if:

- The printer driver data format is TBCP and the data format selected using the control panel is Binary Data.
- The printer driver data format is binary and the data format selected using the control panel is TBCP.

Note

❒ Default: TBCP

❖ **Resolution**
Select the resolution.

- 300 dpi
- 600 dpi

Note

❒ Default: 600 dpi

❖ **PDF Menu**
You can set conditions when using PDF for printing.

❖ **Change PDF Password**
Specify the password for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

Important

❒ If you do not set a PDF password, this menu does not appear.

❒ The password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but must be sent through the network. For increased security, use this menu on the control panel to set the password directly.

❖ **PDF Group Password**
Specify a group password specified using DeskTopBinder Lite.

Important

❒ If you do not set a PDF group password, this menu does not appear.

❒ When you use a group password, the optional data protection unit must be installed.

❒ The password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but must be sent through the network. For increased security, use this menu on the control panel to set the password directly.

❒ Default: no password set

❖ **Resolution**
Specify the resolution for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- 300 dpi
- 600 dpi

Note

❒ Default: 600 dpi

Security Options Menu

You can specify security settings. Depending on the security settings, certain items may not be displayed.

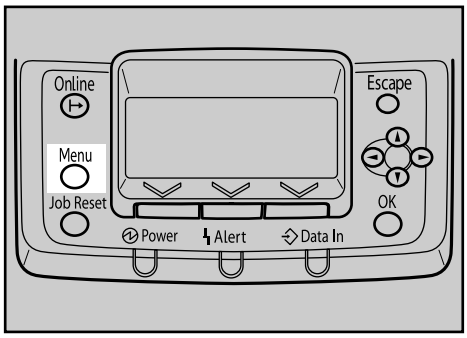
Changing the Security Options Menu

Follow the procedure below to erase data inside memory.

Important

❒ This setting appears only when the optional security card is installed.

1 **Press the 【Menu】 key.**



BAL051S

2 **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Security Options], and then press the 【OK】 key.**

3 **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select [Erase All Memory], and then enter the 【OK】 key.**

4 **Press the 【▲】 or 【▼】 key to select the erase method, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

When you select **[Random Numbers]**, enter overwrite times.

All memories will be erased.

5 **When the confirmation screen appears, press [Exit] key.**

6 **Turn off the power of the printer.**

Security Options Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Security Options menu.

❖ **Extend Auth. Management**
This menu is available only when the optional authentification module is installed. You can use it to select whether or not to apply Extended Authorization Management.

- On
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off

❖ **Extended Security**
Depending on the setting of the printer, some of the settings listed below may not appear.

❖ **Driver Encryption Key**
Specify the driver encryption key.

❖ **Encrypt Address Book**
Select whether or not to encrypt the printer's address book data.

- On
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off

❖ **Restrict User Info.Display**
Select whether or not to display user information as "********" when checking job information without being authenticated through user authentication.

- On
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off

❖ **Enhance File Protection**
Select whether or not to automatically lock password-protected print files if an invalid password is entered ten times. When a file is locked, you cannot select them even if the correct password is entered.

- On
- Off

Note
❒ Default: Off

❖ **Settings by SNMPv1 and v2**

Select whether or not to prohibit changes to the printer settings through access using SNMPv1, v2 protocol.

- Prohibit
- Do not prohibit

Note

❒ Default: Do not prohibit

❖ **Simple Encryption**

Select whether or not to use simple, or restricted, encryption when enhanced encryption cannot be used.

- Restrict
- Do not Restrict

Note

❒ Default: Do not Restrict

❖ **Authenticate Current Job**

Select whether or not authentication is required for operations such as canceling jobs. If set to Login Privilege, only authorized users or machine administrator can operate the printer. If set to Access Privilege, users who sent a print job or the machine administrator can operate the printer.

- Login Privilege
- Access Privilege
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❖ **Password Policy**

Specify the format of passwords: types of characters to be used and minimum length.

Valid characters for passwords are upper-case letters, lower-case letters, decimal numbers, and symbols such as #. If complexity is set to Level 1, passwords must use two types of these characters; if set to Level 2, three types.

- Complexity Setting
  Level 1, Level 2, Do not Restrict

  Note

  ❒ Default: Do not Restrict
- Minimum Character No.
  Between 0 to 32

  Note

  ❒ Default: 0

  ❒ If set to 0, minimum length is not specified.

❖ **@Remote Service**
Select whether or not to prohibit @Remote service.

- Prohibit
- Do not prohibit

Note

❒ Default: Do not prohibit

❒ If you would like to set to Prohibit, contact your service representative.

❖ **Service Mode Lock**
Select whether or not to prohibit entering Service mode.

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ This setting may not appear depending on the setting of the printer.

❖ **Firmware Version**
Displays the firmware version of the printer.

❖ **Network Security Level**
Specify the network security level.

- Level 0
- Level 1
- Level 2

Note

❒ Default: Level 0

❖ **Auto Erase Memory Setting**
Select whether or not to automatically delete memory. When set to on, select the deletion method. If the deletion method is Random Numbers, also specify the overwrite times.

- On
  HD Erase Method: NSA, DoD, Random Numbers
  No. of Overwrites: Between 1 to 9
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ This setting appears only when the optional security card is installed.

❖ **Erase All Memory**

Select to delete all data inside the memory. When deleting memory, select the deletion method. If the deletion method is Random Numbers, also specify the overwrite times.

- HD Erase Method
  NSA, DoD, Random Numbers
- No. of Overwrites
  Between 1 to 9

Note

❒ This setting appears only when the optional security card is installed.

❖ **Transfer Log Setting**

You can select whether or not to send log information to the log collection server.

- On (Only available from the log collection server.)
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

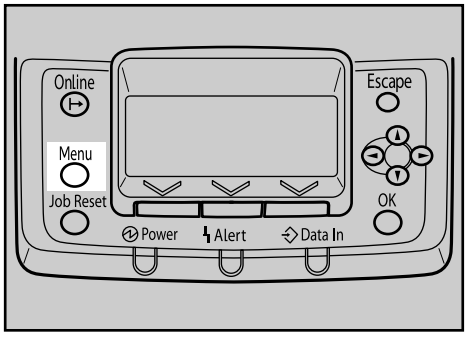
Host Interface Menu

You can set configurations about network connections and communication when using parallel connection between the printer and the computer. The changed configuration holds even if the printer is turned off.

Changing the Host Interface Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the I/O Timeout setting.

1. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**



BAL051S

2. **Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select [Host Interface], and then press the 【OK】 key.**

3. **Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select [I/O Timeout], and then press the 【OK】 key.**

4. **Press the 【▼】 or 【▲】 key to select the lead time needed to end a printing operation, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

   Wait for one second. The Host Interface menu appears.

5. **Press the 【Menu】 key.**

   The initial screen appears.

Host Interface Menu Parameters

This section explains parameters that can be set on the Host Interface menu.

❖ **I/O Buffer**

Select the size of I/O Buffer. Normally it is not necessary to change this setting.

- 128 KB
- 256 KB

Note

❒ Default: 128 KB

❖ **I/O Timeout**

Specify how many seconds the printer should wait before ending a print job. If printing operation is frequently interrupted by data from other ports, you can increase the timeout period.

- 10 seconds
- 15 seconds
- 20 seconds
- 25 seconds
- 60 seconds

Note

❒ Default: 15 seconds

❖ **Network**

You can make network-related settings.

Note

❒ This menu appears only when the optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❒ For details, see Hardware Guide.

❖ **Machine IPv4 Address**

Select whether to set the IPv4 address automatically or manually.

- Auto-Obtain (DHCP)/Specify (Default: Auto-Obtain (DHCP))
  When DHCP is set to on, the IPv4 address, subnet mask address, and gateway address cannot be changed. To change them, set DHCP to off. Contact your administrator for information about the network configuration.
- IP Add.
  Manually specify the IPv4 address.

  Note

  ❒ Default: 011.022.033.044
- Subnet M
  Manually specify the subnet mask.

  Note

  ❒ Default: 0.0.0.0
- Gateway
  Manually specify the gateway address.

  Note

  ❒ Default: 0.0.0.0

❖ **IPv6 Stateless Setting**

Select whether to enable or disable IPv6.

- Active
- Inactive

Note

❒ Default: Active

❖ **NW Frame Type**

Specify the frame type for NetWare.

- Auto Select
- Ethernet II
- Ethernet 802.2
- Ethernet 802.3
- Ethernet SNAP

Note

❒ Default: Auto Select

❖ **Effective Protocol**

Specify the effective protocol.

- IPv4
  Active, Inactive

  Note

  ❒ Default: Active
- IPv6
  Active, Inactive

  Note

  ❒ Default: Inactive
- NetWare
  Active, Inactive

  Note

  ❒ Default: Active
- SMB
  Active, Inactive

  Note

  ❒ Default: Active
- AppleTalk
  Active, Inactive

  Note

  ❒ Default: Active

❖ **Ethernet Speed**

Specify the network speed to operate the printer.

- Auto Select
- 10Mbps Half Duplex
- 10Mbps Full Duplex
- 100Mbps Half Duplex
- 100Mbps Full Duplex

Note

❒ Default: Auto Select

❖ **LAN Type**

Select Ethernet or IEEE 802.11b wireless LAN.

- Ethernet
- IEEE 802.11b

Note

❒ Default: Ethernet

❒ This menu appears only when the optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❖ IEEE 802.11b

Configure settings for wireless LAN. This menu appears only when the optional 802.11b interface unit is installed.

❖ Communication Mode

Specify the transmission mode for IEEE 802.11b.

- 802.11 Ad hoc
- Infrastructure
- Ad hoc

Note

❒ Default: 802.11 Ad hoc

❒ Transmission mode can also be set using a Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ SSID Setting

Specify the SSID in the infrastructure mode and the 802.11 Ad hoc modes.

Note

❒ Default: blank (ASSID)

❒ Select **[?]** to enter **[/]** for the SSID. Also, **[¥]** appears when printing the configuration page, read it as **[/]**.

❒ Characters used are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes).

❒ An SSID is set automatically to the nearest access point if no SSID has been set.

❒ If no SSID has been set for the 802.11 Ad hoc mode, an SSID is set automatically and the same SSID is used for the 802.11 Ad hoc mode and the infrastructure mode.

❒ If blank is specified in SSID for 802.11b Ad hoc mode or Ad hoc mode, "ASSID" appears.

❒ An SSID can also be set using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ Channel

Select channels:
220-240V 1-13
120V 1-11

Note

❒ **220-240V** **120V** Default: 11

❖ **Security Type**

Select whether to enable or disable encryption. When encryption is enabled, specify the security type.

- Off
- WEP
  - Hex: Enter the WEP key using a hexadecimal number sequence. When using 64 bit WEP, enter 10 ASCII characters. When using 128 bit WEP, enter 26 ASCII characters.
  - ASCII: Enter the WEP key using an ASCII character sequence. When using 64 bit WEP, enter 5 ASCII characters. When using 128 bit WEP, enter 13 ASCII characters.
- WPA

  Encryption Method
  - TKIP
  - CCMP(AES)

  Authentication Method
  - WPA-PSK: From 8 to 63 ASCII characters can be entered.
  - WPA : When selecting this method, obtain a certificate using Web Image Monitor.
  - WPA2-PSK: Same as WPA-PSK, 8 to 63 ASCII characters can be entered.
  - WPA2: A supplemental specification of WPA. Fully compatible with IEEE802.11i.

Note

❒ Default: Off

❒ The WEP key can also be set using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

❖ **Wireless LAN Signal**

You can check the signal strength when using wireless LAN.

❖ **Communication Speed**

You can select the transmission speed for IEEE 802.11b.

- Auto
- 11Mbps Fixed
- 5.5Mbps Fixed
- 2Mbps Fixed
- 1Mbps Fixed

Note

❒ Default: Auto

❖ **Restore Defaults**

Reset the wireless LAN to default.

❖ USB Settings

❖ USB Speed

Select speed for USB interface.

- Auto Select
- Full Speed

Note

❒ Default: Auto Select

❖ Fixed USB Port

- On
- Off

Note

❒ Default: Off

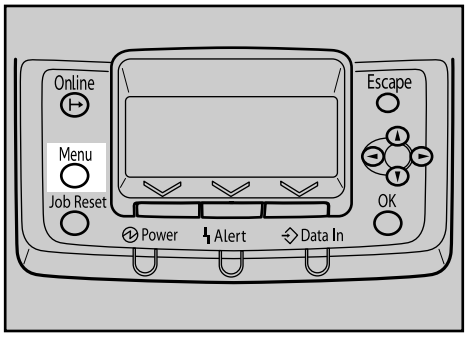
Language Menu

You can set language displayed on the menu.

Changing the Language Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the interface language.

1 **Press the【Menu】key.**



BAL051S

2 **Press the【▼】or【▲】key to select [Language], and then press the【OK】key.**

3 **Press the【▼】or【▲】key to select the language, and then press the【OK】key.**

Wait for one second. The Language menu screen appears.

4 **Press the【Menu】key.**

The initial screen appears.

Language Menu Parameters

You can select the language you use. Available languages are as follows:

English, French, German, Italian, Spanish, Dutch, Portuguese, Russian

Note

❒ Default: English

5. Printing GL/2 and TIFF Files

Printable Files

This machine can print GL/2 and TIFF/CALS files.

❖ **GL/2**

Complies with the Pen Plotter command set HP-GL (Hewlett Packard's Graphics Language), the Raster Plotter command set HP-GL/2 (Hewlett Packard's Graphics Language Standard), and HP-RTL (HP's Raster Transfer Language) developed by HP (Hewlett Packard).
HP-GL emulates the HP-GL commands of HP7550A.
HP-GL/2 and HP-RTL emulate the HP-GL/2 commands of HP DesignJet 600.
You can print from CAD applications that use HP-GL and HP-GL/2 commands.

Note

❒ For details about specification of printable files, see "Printable GL/2 Files".

Reference

p.169 "Printable GL/2 Files"

❖ **TIFF/CALS**

Print TIFF (Tagged Image File Format) format bitmap files from UNIX workstations and DOS/V computers.
TIFF/CALS files are rastorized by the machine. "Rastorization" refers to the process of printing dot by dot from the bitmap image. This process does not require a printer driver so printing can be set from either the machine or the Web browser.

Note

❒ You can print GL/2 and TIFF/CALS files using PostScript 3.

❒ For details about specification of printable files, see "Printable TIFF Files", or "Printable CALS Files".

Reference

p.179 "Printable TIFF Files"

p.183 "Printable CALS Files"

To Print

The print settings made by other supplier's GL/2 and HDI drivers cannot be inherited.

When printing from GL/2 & TIFF, "Auto Paper Select" becomes disabled, and a paper size different to that specified in the data might be requested.

If you print a black and white (monochrome) image at a resolution that the machine does not support, the print image might contain streaks or moiré patterns.

Follow the procedures below to print GL/2 and TIFF/CALS files from the machine.

- Using Web Printing Tool
  GL/2 and TIFF/CALS files
- Using HDI Driver
  GL/2 files
- Using the printing commands
  GL/2 and TIFF/CALS files

Using Web Printing Tool

About Web Printing Tool

Web Printing Tool allows you to print files, make print settings, and acquire system logs, via a Web browser.

Recommended Web browsers are as follows:

- Windows:
  Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0.28 or a later version
  FireFox 1.5.0 or a later version
- Macintosh:
  Safari 2.0 or a later version
  FireFox 1.5.0 or a later version

❖ **Java applet**

Web Printing Tool requires Java Runtime Environment. Download it from the following web site:

http://www.java.com/

- About the certificate
  - If you start Web Printing Tool, a dialog box about issuing the certificate appears. Click **[Run]**.
  - Select the **[Always trust content from this publisher.]** check box. No warning will be shown after starting Web Printing Tool.
  - If you click **[Cancel]**, Web Printing Tool will not start. Close the Web browser, and then restart Web Printing Tool.
- The certificate becomes effective after the **[Security]** setting under **[Advanced]** on the Java control panel is set as follows:
  - Allow user to grant permissions to signed content
  - Allow user to grant permissions to content from an untrusted authority
- The default Java Runtime setting is effective.
- Compatible languages:
  Web Printing Tool does not change the language settings of this machine. If necessary, change the language using the Web browser.

Note

❒ Make the JavaScript, and Java applet following settings (required):
  - Enable JavaScript.
  - Install Java Runtime Environment (JRE 1.5 or later version.) and enable applet.
  - Pop up blocking may not be set, depending on the Web browser you are using. If this is the case, the Help file will not be properly displayed.

❒ If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your administrator for information about the settings.

❒ We recommend using Web Printing Tool in the same network.

❒ You cannot access to the machine from outside the firewall.

❒ When using the machine under DHCP, the IP address may be automatically changed by the DHCP server settings. Enable DDNS setting on the machine, and then connect using the machine's host name.

❒ Alternatively, set a static IP address to the DHCP server.

❒ When you are using Firefox, fonts and colors may be different, or tables may be out of shape.

❒ When using a host name under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.

Displaying top page

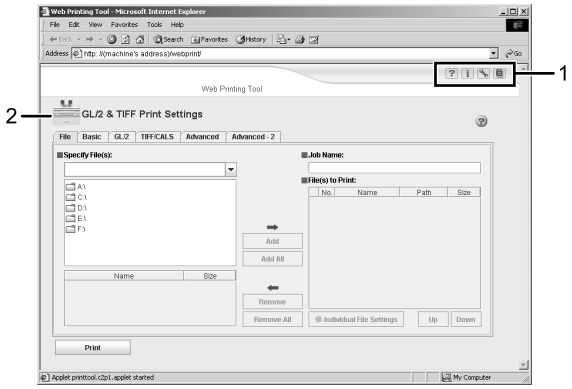
This section explains the how to display Web Printing Tool.

1 Start your Web browser.

2 Enter "http://(machine's address)/webprint/" in the address bar of a Web browser.

Top Page of Web Printing Tool appears.

If the machine's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, you can enter it.



ATW010S

1. Header area

The area at the top of the Web Printing Tool page is called the header area. The following items appear in the header area.

[Help] button

Click to display Help.

[Version Information] button

Click to display Web Printing Tool version information.

[GL/2 & TIFF Initial Configuration] button

Click to display the **[GL/2 & TIFF Initial Configuration]** page.

[System Log] button

Click to display the **[System Log]** page.

2. GL/2 & TIFF Print Settings

The area at the top of the Web Printing Tool page is the GL/2 & TIFF Print Settings area.

Note

❒ To open the **[GL/2 & TIFF Initial Configuration]** or **[System Log]** page, you must enter the administrator password.

❒ For details, see Web Printing Tool's Help.

Reference

p.155 "How to use help"

Basic operations of Web Printing Tool

1 In the menu area to the left, click the menu item corresponding to the function you want to know about.

The page for the selected menu item appears in the work area to the right.

2 Use the displayed page to make settings for printing.

About password authentication

- The password authentication is required to display the **[GL/2 & TIFF Initial Configuration]** page or **[System Log]** page.
- Click the link in the header area. Enter the password in the authentication dialog box that appears.
- If you enter an invalid password, authentication fails and an error message appears. Click **[OK]** in the message box, and then enter the password again. If you enter an invalid password three times, the top page of Web Printing Tool appears. Click the link in the header area to attempt authentication again.
- Password authentication is effective until the **[GL/2 & TIFF Initial Configuration]** page or **[System Log]** page is closed.
- You can use either Web Printing Tool or the control panel to set GL/2 & TIFF Initial Configuration. The settings are the same for both Web Printing Tool and the control panel.

Note

❒ For details about the login password, see Notes to Administrator.

How to use help

While using Web Printing Tool, you can view explanations about operations of the currently displayed page and the meaning of individual settings and items.

- To view Help top page: click the button in the header area.
- To view Web Printing Tool Help page: click the button in GL/2 & TIFF Print Settings area.
- To close Help: click the **[Close]** button inside the Help window.

Using From HDI Driver

Reference

p.165 “Using the HDI Driver for AutoCAD”

Using From the Printing Commands

The following explains printing operations using the “lpr”, “rcp”, and “ftp” commands.

Note

❒ Match the data format of the file to be printed with the emulation mode of the printer.

❒ If the message “print requests full” appears, no print jobs can be accepted. Try again when sessions end. For each command, the amount of possible sessions is indicated as follows:

- lpr: 5 (When the spool printing function is available: 10)
- rcp, rsh: 5
- ftp: 3

❒ Enter the file name in a format including the path from the directory executing commands.

lpr

❖ **When specifying a printer by IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's IP address [-ol] \pass name\file name
```

❖ **When using a host name instead of an IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's host name [-ol] \pass name\file name
```

When printing a binary file, add the “-ol” option (lowercase O, and lowercase L).

When using a printer with the host name “host” to print a PostScript file named “file 1” located in the “C:PRINT” directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> lpr -Shost -Pfiletype=RPS -ol C:\PRINT\file1
```

rcp

First, register the printer's host name in the hosts file.

```
c:> rcp [-b] \pass name\file name [pass name\file name...]
printer's host name:
```

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a file named "file 1" or "file 2" located in the "C:PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> rcp -b C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2 host:
```

Note

❒ In file names, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards.

❒ When printing a binary file, add the "-b" option.

❒ For details about a host name instead of an IPv4 address, see Network Guide.

ftp

Use the "put" or "mput" command according to the number of files to be printed.

❖ **When one file is printed**

```
ftp> put \pass name\file name
```

❖ **When multiple files are printed**

```
ftp> mput \pass name\file name [\pass name\file name...]
```

Follow the procedure below to print using the "ftp" command.

1. **Formulate the printer's IP address or the host name of the hosts file printer as an argument and use the "ftp" command.**

   ```
   % ftp printer's IP address
   ```

2. **Enter the user name and password, and then press the 【Enter】 key.**

   For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

   ```
   User:
   Password:
   ```

   When user authentication is set, enter a login user name and password.

3. **When printing a binary file, set the file mode to binary.**

   ```
   ftp> bin
   ```

   When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

4 Specify files to be printed.

The following shows the examples of printing a file named "file 1" in the "C:PRINT" directory and printing file 1 and file 2.

```
ftp> put C:\PRINT\file1
ftp> mput C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2
```

5 Quit ftp.

```
ftp> bye
```

Note

- ❒ "=", ",", "_", and ";"cannot be used for filenames. File names will be read as option strings.
- ❒ For "mput" command, option can not be defined.
- ❒ For "mput" command, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards in file names.
- ❒ When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

Print Settings for GL/2 & TIFF

This section explains the GL/2 & TIFF settings that you can set using the control panel. GL/2 & TIFF settings are applied to GL/2 and TIFF files printed from Web Printing Tool and the printing commands.

❖ **Priority of Settings**

- Settings changed using the control panel take priority.
- You cannot change GL/2 & TIFF initial configuration made using Web Printing Tool, if the setting was changed using the control panel and is currently in effect.
- GL/2 & TIFF is ineffective during the printing of GL/2 files using the HDI driver. Settings made using an application have priority over GL/2 & TIFF settings.

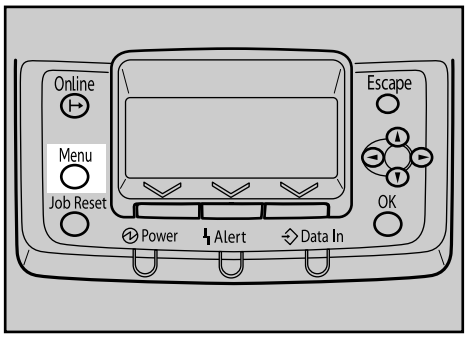
Note

❒ The settings are the same for both Web Printing Tool and the control panel.

❒ For details about making settings using Web Printing Tool, see Web Printing Tool Help.

Adjusting the Print Settings for GL/2 & TIFF

1 **Press the【Menu】key.**



BAL051S

2 **Press the【▲】or【▼】key to select [Extended Features], and then.press the【OK】key.**

3 **Check [GL/2 & TIFF] is selected, and then press the【OK】key.**

4 Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the setting you want to make, and then press the [OK] key.

- General Settings
  Can be applied regardless of data format.
- GL/2 Print Settings
  Can be applied to GL/GL2 data only.
- TIFF/CALS Print Settings
  Can be applied to TIFF/CALS data only.

5 Configure the settings.

6 When you have finished making settings, press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

General Settings

Specify basic print settings.

❖ **Paper Tray Setting**
Select which input tray to use for printing. If you select "Auto Paper Select" the machine automatically selects an input tray based on the paper size and type specified by the job.

❖ **Margin Tolerance**
Specify an area of allowance for the gap between the print area and the paper size when using "Auto Paper Select".

❖ **Output Exit**
Specify the output tray for printed paper.

❖ **Auto Tray Switching**
Enables the machine to switch automatically from an emptied paper tray to another tray that contains the same size, orientation, and type of paper, without interrupting the job.

❖ **Paper Type**
Select a paper type.

❖ **Cut Method**
Select the paper cut method. When roll paper is selected for input tray, the cut method is enabled.

- Preset Cut
  Cuts the roll paper to a standard size that fits the width of the print area. If there is no appropriate standard size (for data such as long plots, etc.), Synchro Cut is applied.
- Synchro Cut
  Cuts the roll paper to the length of the print area.

❖ **Reduce / Enlarge**
Specify a scaling mode to reduce or enlarge the print size of documents.

❖ **Magnification Ratio**
Specify the ratio when Magnification Ratio is selected for "Reduce / Enlarge".

❖ **Direct. Mag. mm (Directional Magnification mm)**
Specify the vertical and horizontal value when Magnification Ratio is selected for "Reduce / Enlarge".

❖ **Margin Adjustment**
Specify the inside margin around the originals (0 to 100 mm in 1 mm increments).

❖ **Extraction**
Specify whether to uncompress and extract compressed job data before printing it. Selecting this option reduces print errors due to corrupted archives, but slows the print process slightly.

❖ **Mirror Image**
Prints images with left and right reversed.

❖ **Positive / Negative**
Prints images with black and white inverted.

❖ **Dithering**
Select a dither pattern appropriate for the print image.

Note

❒ If you select **[Auto]**, **[DTP]**, or **[Photograph]** for this setting, the image is printed using **[Photograph]**.

❖ **Adjust: Horizontal**
Adjusts the horizontal size difference between original data and printed image for scaled drawings that must be accurately printed. The ratio range is 99.0-101.0%, which you can adjust in increments of 0.01%.

❖ **Adjust: Vertical**
Adjusts the vertical size difference between original data and printed image for scaled drawings that must be accurately printed. The ratio range is 99.0-101.0%, which you can adjust in increments of 0.01%.

❖ **Paper Folding**
If the folding finisher is installed, select a paper folding method.

GL/2 Print Settings

Specify print settings of HP-GL and HP-GL/2 data.

❖ **Hard Clip**
Enables and disables output hard clip limits given by PS commands. If "Off" is selected, the actual drawing area will be the printed area.

❖ **Centring**
Print images at the centre of the hard clip area.

❖ **SP Command**
Specify whether to eject paper at receipt of "SP;" and "SP0;" command.

❖ **Transparency Mode**
Specify the transparent processing mode by MC command and TR command.

- Always Active
  Always activates MC/TR commands in HP-GL2 data come into effect.
- Use File Defaults
  Follows MC/TR commands in HP-GL2 data.
- Always Inactive
  Ignores MC/TR commands in HP-GL2 data forcibly.

❖ **Source Transparency Mode**
Specify the transparent processing method by "Source Transparency Mode (ESC*v#N)".

- Always Active
  Always activates ESC*v#N commands in RTL data come into effect.
- Use File Defaults
  Follows ESC*v#N commands in RTL data.
- Always Inactive
  Ignores ESC*v#N commands in RTL data forcibly.

❖ **Adjust X Offset**
Specify X-axis offset for origin of the drawing area in 1 mm increments within the range between -199 and 199 mm.

❖ **Adjust Y Offset**
Specify Y-axis offset for origin of the drawing area in 1 mm increments within the range between -199 and 199 mm.

❖ **Brightness**
Adjust brightness for RGB-color and grayscale image data. Higher brightness value lightens the entire image while lower brightness value darkens the image.

❖ **Pen Width**
Select whether to use file defaults settings, or to specify width for each pen.

❖ **Pen Density**
Select whether to use file defaults settings, or to specify density for each pen.

❖ **Pen 0 Custom Settings - Pen 15 Custom Settings**
Specify width and/or density for each pen when the "Use File Defaults" option is selected. Pen Width can be selected from the list of 0.00 - 12.00 mm in 0.01 mm increments, however actual width of printed image could be slightly different from the specified width because lines are printed in dots. Pen Density can be specified in 10% increments within the range between 0 and 100%.

TIFF/CALS Print Settings

Specify print settings of TIFF and CALS data.

❖ **Centring**
Print drawing area at the centre of the paper.

❖ **Adjust X Offset**
Specify X-axis offset for origin of the drawing area in 1 mm increments within the range between -199 and 199 mm.

❖ **Adjust Y Offset**
Specify Y-axis offset for origin of the drawing area in 1 mm increments within the range between -199 and 199 mm.

❖ **Brightness**
Adjust brightness for RGB-color and grayscale image data. Higher brightness value lightens the entire image while lower brightness value darkens the image.

Using the HDI Driver for AutoCAD

You cannot use the HDI driver to select the orientation (portrait or landscape) of paper on the bypass tray.

If you use the HDI driver to print onto standard size paper, alert messages will not appear, even if the paper orientation set in the print data does not match the orientation of the paper in the tray.

Setup CD-ROM

The HDI driver for the AutoCAD 2000 series is provided to work specifically with the AutoCAD 2000 series of CAD applications.

Using the HDI driver reduces data size during print out, enabling faster print out.

Also, the HDI driver is specially designed for use in environments where AutoCAD 2000 applications are running.

Important

- ❒ If you are already using a printer of the same maker, you cannot use different HDI drivers simultaneously.
- ❒ If you still want to install the HDI driver, delete the older HDI driver. To use the HDI driver, you must install it beforehand. The HDI driver is stored on the CD-ROM provided with the machine.

Note

- ❒ The Installation CD-ROM contains a Readme file that you must read. It contains important information about the HDI driver and notes on using the application.
- ❒ The Readme file is in the "Installation Disk" folder on the Installation CD-ROM.
- ❒ This section assumes the user has full knowledge of Windows functions and procedures. For details about Windows, see the Windows manual.
- ❒ This section assumes the machine is connected to the single computer. The screens you see on your machine might not be the same as those shown in this manual, depending on the environment you are using.
- ❒ The "Driver" folder contains folders other than the "HDI" folders. This emulation can only use HDI and printer drivers that are stored in the "HDI" folders.

CD-ROM Folders

The CD-ROM contains following folders and files:

DRIVERS	HDI	AC2000
		AC2000i
		AC2002
		AC2004
		AC2007

Contains HDI drivers for AutoCAD applications and the Readme files.

Installing the HDI Driver

The following explains how to install the HDI driver under Windows 2000. All the procedures are the same for Windows 95/98/Me, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0.

Important

- ❒ AutoCAD applications must be installed before you install the HDI driver.
- ❒ This section explains installation using AutoCAD 2007.
- ❒ Quit all applications currently running before beginning the HDI driver installation.

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

2 On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Control Panel].

3 Double-click [Autodesk Plotter Manager].

[Autodesk Plotter Manager] appears only if there is the AutoCAD 2000 series application already installed.

4 Double-click [Add-A-Plotter Wizard].

5 Click [Next >].

6 Click [Next >].

7 Click [Have Disk].

8 Select [CD-ROM] in [My Computer].

Check that the CD-ROM provided with the machine is shown.

9 Double-click [DRIVERS], and then double-click [HDI].

10 Click the file that matches the AutoCAD application you want to use.

AC2000: AutoCAD 2000/AutoCAD LT2000

AC2000i: AutoCAD 2000i/AutoCAD LT2000i

AC2002: AutoCAD 2002/AutoCAD LT2002

AC2004: AutoCAD 2004/AutoCAD LT2004/AutoCAD 2005/
AutoCAD LT2005/AutoCAD 2006/AutoCAD LT2006

AC2007: AutoCAD 2007/AutoCAD LT2007

Check the driver you selected matches the AutoCAD version you want to use. If they do not match, an error screen appears. See the HDI driver's Readme if this occurs.

11 Select the driver you want to install, and then click [Open].

12 **In "Manufacturers", select the manufacturer. Then, in "Models", select the printer driver. Then click [Next >].**

13 **Click [Next >].**

14 **Select [Port], then select the port you want to use, and then click [Next >].**

15 **Confirm the plotter name you want to use is selected, and then click [Next >].**

Installation is complete. If the installation is successful, the HDI driver is added to the **[AutoDesk Plotter Settings (Plotter window)]** window, and it can be selected from **[Printing Devices]** during printing. For details about screens and printing procedures, see the online Help. To display the online Help, click **[Help]** on the printer driver screen.

16 **Click [Finish].**

Displaying and Printing Help

Displaying Help

This section explains installation using AutoCAD 2007.

1 **On the [File] menu, click [Plot...].**

The **[Plot...]** dialog box appears.

2 **Check the HDI driver you want to use appears in the [Name:] list in the "Printer/plotter" area, and then click [Properties...].**

3 **Click [Custom Properties] on the [Device and Document Settings] tab.**

The **[Custom Properties]** button appears under the screen.

4 **Click [Custom Properties...].**

5 **The Help screen appears if you click [Help].**

Printing Help

❖ **Printing by Book**

If you select the book icon, you can print several topics at once.
Select the book icon in the **[Help Topics]** dialog box, and then click **[Print...]**.

❖ **Printing by Topic**

There are two methods of printing by topic:

- Select the topic icon in the **[Help Topics]** dialog box, and then click **[Print...]**.
- Display the topic you want to print, and then click **[Print...]**.

Printable GL/2 Files

HP-GL Specifications

The GL/2 and TIFF filter modules that are included in GL/2 and TIFF filter products emulate the HP-GL commands of HP7550A. However, the command syntax differs (as shown below) according to the settings of the GL/2 and TIFF modules.

HP-GL command syntax

The syntax of HP-GL commands is as follows: a section containing two alphabetical characters, a parameter section (certain commands only), and a terminator section.

If you specify multiple parameters at the end, a separator must be inserted between each parameter.

The HP-GL/2 filter can use the separators and terminators shown below.

Syntax Elements	Format and Range
Separator	comma or space
Terminator	; or LF or another command
Integer parameter	−999999999 to +999999999
Real number parameter	−999999999. 999999999 to +999999999.999999999

Plotter setup commands

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following plotter setup command and will ignore it if it is included:

Command	Description
GM	Changes buffer sizes, but not the size of the input or output buffer.

Commands for plotting Circles, Ovals, and Multiple Shapes

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following Circles/Ovals/Multiple Shapes plotting commands and will ignore them if they are included:

Command	Description
UF	Specifies the fill pattern at parallel interval.
PT	Specifies the overprint interval.

Commands for plotting basic characters

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following basic character plotting commands and will ignore them if they are included:

Command	Description
DU	Uses the user unit to specify the character plotting direction.
SU	Uses the user unit to specify the character size.
BL	Stores character strings for labeling in the label buffer.
OL	Obtains information from output capable character strings in the buffer.
IC	Obtains the location of certain ASCII character inside the NCP cell.
OB	Outputs the co-ordinates of the upper right and lower left corners around the character on receipt of this command.
LE	Uses the 7240/7245 plotter to underline or change the character width under character set 20 to 28.
PB	Plots the content of the label buffer.

Commands for extended character sets

The HP-GL/2 filter supports the following character sets: Standard ASCII (0); kanji (101); and 8, 18, and 43 (katakana). The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the commands for multiple character sets and making optional characters:

Command	Description
CM	Specifies modes for selecting the character set and using it.
DS	Specifies the character set selected by parameter at the character slot.
IV	Calls up the character slot (G0 - G3) on the right half (GR) or left half (GL) of the code table.
CC	Specifies smoothness of characters when a character set between 10 to 19 and 40 to 49 is selected.
UC	Plots symbols not defined in the character set.

Commands for changing the plotting domain

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following commands for changing the plotting domain according to the HP plotter and will ignore them if they are included:

Command	Description
OW	Enables the left down and right down coordinates of the window to be output.

Plotter control commands

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following commands for plotter control according to the HP plotter and will ignore them if they are included:

Command	Description
AP	Specifies the automatic pen function.
FS	Specifies the pen pressure.
AS	Specifies the pen acceleration.
VS	Specifies the maximum speed when the pen is lowered.
VA	Automatically adjusts the speed of the pen when it is lowered to the speed at which the computer sends the coordinates.
VN	Used when disabling the VA command.
GP	Used when collecting pens of the same type and color into one group.
SG	Selects the group specified by the GP command.
CV	Controls the curve line generator.
AF	Feeds paper only when something is being plotted on the current paper.
AH	Feeds half of the paper only when something is being plotted on the current paper.
EC	Controls the paper cut function.
NR	Puts the plotter into the “NOT READY” state.
BF	Stores the HP-GL command following this command to the re-plot buffer until the RP command is received.
RP	Re-plots data using the data in the re-plot buffer.
WD	Displays messages on the plotter's front panel LCD, and applies the plotter's keyboard mode.
KY	Assigns the programmed status to the plotter's front panel function key.
OK	Enables the number of the first pressed front panel function key to be output.
GC	Specifies the group count number used in response to the OG command.
OG	Enables the current group account information to be output.
BP	Sounds the plotter's beeper.

Digitization commands

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following digitization related commands and will ignore them if they are included:

Command	Description
DP	Sets the plotter to digitize mode.
OD	Enables the last co-ordinates of digitized positions and the pen state preceding this command to be output.
DC	Cancels digitize mode.

Commands for obtaining plotter information

The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following commands for obtaining information from the plotter and will ignore them if they are included:

Commands	Description
IM	Sets conditions for notifying the host computer of HP-GL errors.
OA	Enables the pen's coordinates to be output.
OC	Enables the co-ordinates and condition of the pen during the last effective command to be output.
RC	Enables the cursor's coordinates and status to be output.
OE	Enables the value of the initial error made before this command was executed to be output.
OF	Enables the value of the plotter unit by 1 mm at each coordinate to be output.
OI	Enables the character strings that distinguish each plotter to be output.
OO	Enables the eight option parameters to be output.
OS	Enables the plotter's status to be output in decimal form.
OT	Enables the carousel's shape and operating conditions of the stool to be output.

Line attribute commands

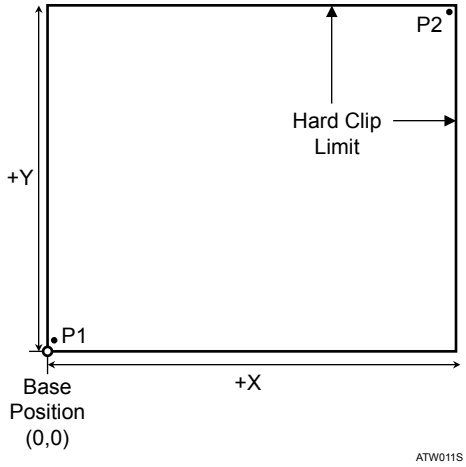
The HP-GL/2 filter does not support the following attributes for the line attribute setting commands and will ignore them if they are included:

Attribute	Specification
End of the line Triangle (Value: 3)	Makes the ends of lines rounded.
Line joint (Type: 2) Triangle Joint (Value: 3)	Makes joints circular.

HP-GL/2 filter coordinates

Like other HP plotters, the HP-GL/2 plots using single 0.025 mm units. When plotting on paper however, the printer's or plotter's resolution determines the plot units.

The following explanation covers the HP-GL/2 filter's start coordinates, plotting origin, and scaling point.



The HP-GL/2 filter uses the initial coordinates, plotting origin, and scaling point to begin processing input data. Input data that has minus coordinates and originates from other than the bottom left area (P1) or the hard clip limit (the PS command-specified area) is shifted by the minimum value of each last drawn coordinate to the plotting origin (where X and Y intersect, in the minus direction).

Likewise, the coordinates of images that are drawn in the plus direction are shifted similarly. Images that exceed the hard clip limit are not output.

If the HP-GL/2 filter's clipping option is enabled (overriding the hard clip limit of the PS command), the data is output with the hard clip limit reset to the image's minimum and maximum value for each co-ordinate, and independent of the original position and the hard clip limit.

HP-GL/2 Specifications

The GL/2 and TIFF filter modules that are included in GL/2 and TIFF filter products emulate the HP-GL commands of the HP DesignJet 600 but differ according to the settings of the GL/2 and TIFF modules. The following commands are also different:

Character group commands

This section explains limitations to commands that belong to the character group shown in the HP-GL/2 reference manual.

Label default status

The table below shows the HP-GL/2 filter's label default status.

Label Attribute	Status
Character set	ASCII code (Roman8)
Label terminator	ASCII code end of text command character ETX (Decimal code 3)
Label's starting point	Current pen position
Character size	Character width 2.83 mm, Character height 3.75 mm (Below A0 size) Character width 4.23 mm, Character height 5.21 mm (Above A0 size)
Label orientation	Horizontal
Margins between characters and lines	Normal (no extra margins added)
Character tilt	No tilt
Character overprint mode	Solid (total overprint)
Font	Courier

Character codes that can be used with LB commands

The HP-GL/2 filter supports three character codes for specifying LB command parameters: ASCII (Roman 8), JIS, and Shift JIS. If other codes are included in HP-GL data, unwanted characters might be output.

Font specification and selection

As with other HP-GL/2 products, procedures for font selection at HP-GL/2 filter are based on SD and AD command parameters.

Parameters that can be used with SD and AD commands

The standard and substitute character sets (SD and AD commands respectively) define each character set's attributes, such as font, font spacing, pitch height, and character width. The table below shows which of the attributes shown in the HP-GL/2 manual can be used with HP-GL/2.

Types and attributes		Default value	Description
1	Character set	277	Roman8
2	Font spacing	0	Fixed spacing
3	Pitch	Depends on paper size	Characters per inch
4	Height	Depends on paper size	Font point
5	Character tilt	0	Upright
6	Line width	0	Normal
7	Font	3	Courier

❖ Character Set

Character set attributes define the character sets used as the standard and substitute character set. The table below shows the character sets that the HP-GL/2 filter can use. If an unusable character set is specified, the default set is applied.

Character set	Description	Note
0 and 277	Roman8	
11	JIS ASCII	
22	Arabic	
43	Katakana	If you select this font, the display might not be as intended, depending on the area you want to use.
101	Shift JIS	
278	Arabic-8	
300	Ventura ITC Zapf Dingbats	
332	PS ITC Zapf Dingbats	
364	ITC Zapf Dingbats 100	
396	ITC Zapf Dingbats 200	
428	ITC Zapf Dingbats 300	
531	HP-GL Download	
numbers higher than 1000	Kanji code	If you select this font, the display might not be as intended, depending on the area you want to use.

❖ Font

The font attribute selects the font that determines the rendering style. The table below shows the character sets that the HP-GL/2 filter can use. If an unusable font is specified, the default font is applied.

Font	Selection condition	Note
Courie	The character set is 0, 277 or the font is 3	
Symbol	The character set is 22, 278	
Zaps Dingbats	The character set is 300, 332, 364, 396, 428	
User font	The character set is 531	Fonts downloaded using the DL command.
Mincho / Gothic	The character set is 101, 43, 1000 or a higher number; or the font is 81, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156	Conditions of usage by Mincho / Gothic depends upon the command parameter.
Stick font	The font is 48, 49, 50	
Helvetica	The font is 4	
Times Roman	The font is 5 and the line width is other than 3, 7	
Times Bold	The font is 5 and the line width is 3 or 7	
Times Italic	The font is 5, the tilt is 1, and the line width is other than 3, 7	
Times Bold Italic	The font is 5, the tilt is 1, and the line width is 3, 7	
Palatino-Roman	The font is 15 and the line width is other than 3, 7	
Palatino-Bold	The font is 5 and the line width is 3, 7	
Palatino-Italic	The font is 15 and the tilt is 1	
Palatino-Bold-Italic	The font is 15 and the tilt is 1 and the line width is 3 , 7	
NewCenturySchlBk	The font is 23 and the line width is other than 3 , 7	
NewCenturySchlBk-Bold	The font is 23 and the line width is 3, 7	
NewCenturySchlBk-Italic	The font is 15, the tilt is 1, and the line width is other than 3, 7	
NewCenturySchlBk-Bold-Italic	The font is 23 , the tilt is 1, and the line width is 3, 7	
AvantGarde-Book	The font is 31	

Font	Selection condition	Note
AvantGarde-Book-Oblique	The font is 31 and the tilt is 1	
Zapfchancery-midium-italic	The font is 43	
Bookman-Light	The font is 47 and the line width is other than 3, 7	
Bookman-DemiLight	The font is 47 and the line width is 3, 7	
Bookman-LightItalic	The font is 47, the tilt is 1, and the line width is other than 3, 7	
Bookman-DemiItalic	The font is 47, the tilt is 1, and the line width is 3, 7	

HP-RTL Specifications

This section explains limitations to commands that are explained in the HP-GL/2 and HP-RTL reference manuals.

Logical Operation (ESC*l#o|ESC*l#o)

The table below shows the specifications of the parameters used by the HP-GL/2 filter's Logical Operation command.

Parameter	Specification
252 (Default)	OVERWRITE procedure
136	AND procedure
168	TRANSPARENT procedure
204	TRANSPARENT procedure
238	OR procedure
Values other than the above	TRANSPARENT procedure

Printable TIFF Files

TIFF Data Specifications

TIFF files that can be processed

This section explains the TIFF filter's file processing limitations. The TIFF filter can process only TIFF files that are compliant with "TIFF Revision 6.0" (Adobe Developers Association, June 1992).

Note

❒ The TIFF filter might be able to process non-compliant TIFF files, but the output is likely to be incorrect, depending on the size of the image.

TIFF header

TIFF data requires the header values shown in the table below.

Field	Values
Byte order	0x4d4d or 0x4949
Version number	42

TIFF directory

If the data is multi-page TIFF:

- Both the directory and data must be divided by page.
- The last four bytes of each directory must contain a pointer to the subsequent page, and the pointer value must increase in keeping with the page order.

  Note

  ❒ The pointer value for both single page TIFF data and the last page of multi-page TIFF data must be "0x00000000".
- The page order must be the same as the intended output order.

TIFF tags

The table below shows the types and values of tags that can be included in the TIFF directory. If included, other tags or unacceptable values are normally ignored, but might occasionally cause processing to stop.

Tag name (number)	Value
ImageWidth (256)	0 - 65535
ImageHeight (257)	0 - 65535
BitsPerSample (258)	1, 4, or 8
Compression (259)	1, 3, or 4
PhotometricInterpretation (262)	0
FillOrder (266)	1
StripOffsets (273)	0 - 2**32 - 1
SamplesPerPixel (277)	1
RowsPerStrip (278)	1 - ImageLength
StripByteCounts (279)	One of the following: ImageWidth × ImageLength / 8 ImageWidth × ImageLength / 2 ImageWidth × ImageLength size of compressed image in bytes
MinSampleValue (280)	0
MaxSampleValue (281)	2**BitsPerSample-1
XResolution (282)	50 - 1200
YResolution (283)	50 - 1200
T4Options (292)	0 or 1
ResolutionUnit (296)	2

Tag values must be entered in byte, ASCII, short, long, or rational data format.

If the value of the tag is a pointer to data that is stored outside the tag entry, that pointer must be at the back of the directory that contains the tag, pointing either to the subsequent directory or the data domain preceding the end of the data, not to the data domain of the subsequent page.

Bitmap images

For reference, the top position of the strip data must be contained in the value of the StripeOffsets (273) tag. The data size (byte) after it is coded must also be specified by the value of StripeByteCounts (279) tag.

The byte at the end of the last page's strip data must be the same as the byte at the end of the TIFF data.

The bitmap data must be one of the following types:

Bitmap image type	Limitations
Monochrome: one sample, one bit (two colors) per pixel.	The value of the BitsPerSample (256) tag must be set to 1. Each pixel must be white when the sample value is 0, and black when the sample value is 1.
Gray scale: one sample, four bit (16 colors) per pixel.	The value of the BitsPerSample (256) tag must be set to be at 4. Each pixel must be white when the sample value is 0, and black when the sample value is 15.
Gray scale: one sample, eight bit (256 colors) per pixel.	The value of the BitsPerSample (256) tag must be set to be at 8. Each pixel must be white when the sample value is 0, and black when the sample value is 255.

The bitmap image data must be coded using one of the following compression methods.

Compression method	Limitations	Notes
Uncompressed method	The image is not compressed. Data for each pixel is stored in the order it is created or scanned. Extra data is added to the end of each line as a pad in place of unused bytes. The value of the Compression (259) tag must be set to 1 and the T4Options (292) tag cannot be included. Also, the value of the StripByteCounts (279) tag must be set as follows: • 2 color monochrome image ImageWidth × ImageLength / 8 • 16 color gray scale image ImageWidth × ImageLength / 2 • 256 color gray scale image ImageWidth × ImageLengt	

Compression method	Limitations	Notes
MH (Modified Huffman) method	This compression method is the same as the one-dimensional coding method of the CCITT Group 3 Fax. This compression method is used for two color monochrome images only. The value of the Compression (259) must be set to 3 and the T4Options (292) tag must be set to 1. Also, the value of the StripByteCounts (279) tag must be set to the size (in bytes) of the compressed data.	
MMR (Modified Modified Read) method	This compression method is the same as the CCITT Group 4 Fax coding method. This compression is used for two color monochrome images only. The value of the Compression (259) tag must be set to 4 and the T4Options (292) tag cannot be included. Also, the value of the StripByteCounts (279) tag must be set to the size (in bytes) of the compressed data.	
LZW (Lempel, Ziv, Welch) method	The value of the Compression (259) tag must be set to 5. Also, the value of the StripByteCounts (279) tag must be set to the size (in bytes) of the compressed data.	This method uses the data compression algorithm originally devised by Terry Welch of Sperry (currently Unisys), and later used as a dictionary "LZ77" algorithm by Abraham Lempel and Jacob Ziv.

Printable CALS Files

CALS Data Specifications

CALS files that can be processed

The TIFF filter can process only CALS files that are "CALS Raster (Type1)" compatible and compliant with the following file format and raster drawing method: "MIL-STD-1840A" (US Department of Defense, December 1987)

Note

❒ The TIFF filter might be able to process non-compliant CALS files, but the output is likely to be incorrect, depending on the size of the image.

CALS headers

CALS data must include a header block that is compliant with the conditions listed after the table below. The header block requires the following eleven header records to be entered at the top in the order shown.

Byte offset	Record ID and configurable value (all ASCII characters)
0000	srcdocid: optional
0128 (0x80)	dstdocid: optional
0258 (0x102)	txtfilid: optional
0348 (0x15C)	Figid: optional
0512 (0x200)	srcgph: optional
0640 (0x280)	doccls: optional
0768 (0x300)	Rtype: 1
0896 (0x380)	rorient: 000, 270
1024 (0x400)	rpelcnt: appropriate value
1152 (0x480)	rdensty: appropriate value
1280 (0x500)	notes: optional
1408 (0x580)	0x20 × 128 bytes
1530 (0x5FA)	0x20 × 128 bytes
1664 (0x680)	0x20 × 128 bytes
1792 (0x700)	0x20 × 128 bytes
1920 (0x780)	0x20 × 128 bytes
2048 (0x800)	Bitmap data

Header Block Conditions

- The header must be 2048 bytes (fixed length).
- Header records must be 128 bytes (fixed length).
- Header records must start with a record ID.
- Specified values for header record IDs must be entered in the separator's two character spaces: Colon (0x3a) and Space (0x20).
- Header records that contain no directive value must be given “NONE” as their value.
- Empty bytes in the header record and header block must be padded with spaces (0x20).

Bitmap image data

Bitmap image data must follow immediately after the header block's final byte and be of the following format:

ITU-T T.6 monochrome raster (Group 4 Fax).

Note

❒ The same compression format as MMR (Modified Modified Read).

6. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

Using Web Image Monitor

Using Web Image Monitor, you can check the printer status and change settings.

❖ **Available operations**

The following operations can be remotely performed using Web Image Monitor from a client computer.

- Displaying printer status or settings
- Checking the print job status or history
- Interrupting currently printing jobs
- Resetting the printer
- Managing the Address Book
- Making printer settings
- Making e-mail notification settings
- Making network protocol settings
- Making security settings

❖ **Configuring the printer**

To perform the operations from Web Image Monitor, TCP/IP is required. After the printer is configured to use TCP/IP, operations from Web Image Monitor become available.

❖ **Recommended Web browser**

- Windows:
  Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 or higher
  Firefox 1.0 or higher
- Mac OS:
  Firefox 1.0 or higher
  Safari 1.0, 1.2, 2.0(412.2) or higher
- Web Image Monitor supports screen reader software
  We recommend JAWS 7.0 or a later version.

Note

- ❒ Safari cannot be used on Mac OS X 10.4.1.
- ❒ Display and operation problems can occur if you do not enable JavaScript and cookies, or if you are using a non-recommended Web Browser.
- ❒ If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
- ❒ If you click your browser's back button but the previous page does not appear, click the browser's refresh button and try again.
- ❒ Printer information is not automatically updated. To perform an update, click **[Refresh]** in the display area.
- ❒ We recommend using Web Image Monitor in the same network.
- ❒ You cannot access to the printer from outside the firewall.
- ❒ When using the printer under DHCP, the IPv4 address may be automatically changed by the DHCP server settings. Enable DDNS setting on the printer, and then connect using the printer's host name. Alternatively, set a static IPv4 address to the DHCP server.
- ❒ If the HTTP port is disabled, connection to the printer using the printer's URL cannot be established. SSL setting must be enabled on this printer. For details, consult your administrator.
- ❒ When using the SSL encryption protocol, enter "https://(printer's address)/". Internet Explorer must be installed on your computer. Use the most recent available version. We recommend Internet Explorer 6.0 or later.
- ❒ When you are using Firefox, fonts and colors may be different, or tables may be out of shape.
- ❒ To use JAWS 7.0 under Web Image Monitor, you must be running Windows OS and Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, or a later version.

Displaying Top Page

This section explains the Top Page and how to display Web Image Monitor.

1 Start your Web browser.

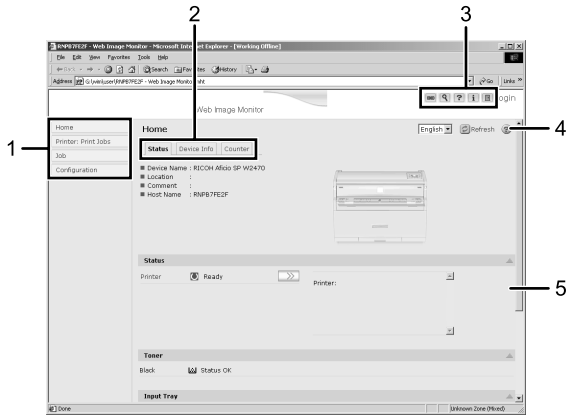
2 Enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar of a Web browser.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

If the printer's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, you can enter it.

When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentification is issued , enter "https://(printer's address)/".

Every Web Image Monitor page is divided into the following areas:



BAL202S

1. **Menu area**

If you select menu, it's content will be shown on the work area, or the sub area.

2. **Tab area**

Details about each menu appears.

3. **Header area**

The dialog box for switching to the user mode and administrator mode appears, and each mode's menu will be displayed.

The link to help and dialog box for keyword search appears.

4. **Help**

Use Help to view or download Help file contents.

5. **Display area**

Displays the contents of the item selected in the menu area.

Machine information in the display area is not automatically updated. Click **[Refresh]** at the upper right in the display area to update the machine information. Click the Web browser's **[Refresh]** button to refresh the entire browser screen.

Note

❒ For details the printer's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, see "Cautions to Take When Using in a Network".

Reference

p.342 "Cautions to Take When Using in a network"

When User Authentication is Set

Login (using Web Image Monitor)

Follow the procedure below to log on when user authentication is set.

1. **Click [Login].**

2. **Enter a login user name and pass word, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

   Note

   ❒ For user code authentication, enter a user code in **[User Name]**, and then click **[OK]**.

   ❒ The procedure may differ depending on the Web browser used.

Log Off (using Web Image Monitor)

Follow the procedure below to log on when user authentication is set.

Click **[Logout]** to log off.

Note

❒ After you log on and change configurations, make sure to always log off.

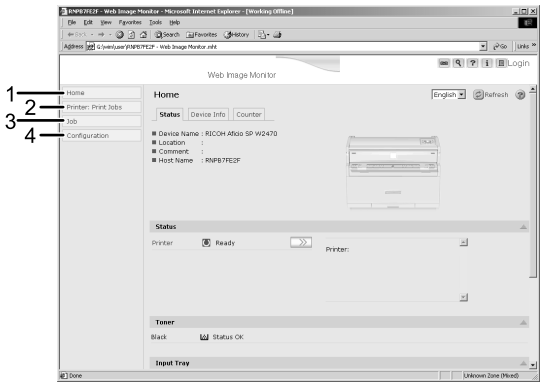
About Menu and Mode

There are two modes available with Web Image Monitor: guest mode and administrator mode.

Displayed items may differ depending on the printers.

❖ About Guest Mode

In the guest mode, printer status, settings, and print job status can be viewed, but the printer settings cannot be changed.



BAL203S

1. Home

The **[Status]**, **[Device Info]**, and **[Counter]** tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

2. Printer: Print Jobs

Allows you to display list of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print jobs.

3. Job

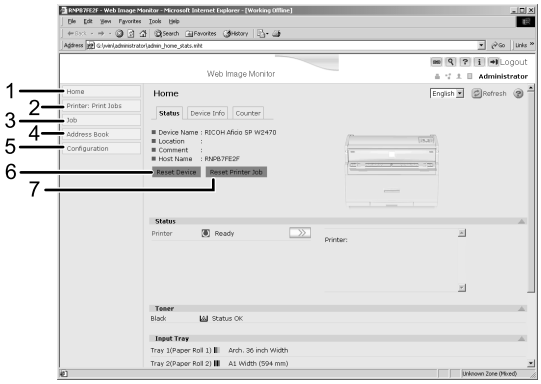
Display all print files.

4. Configuration

Display current printer and network settings.

❖ Administrator Mode

In the administrator mode, you can configure various printer settings.



BAL204S

1. **Home**

The **[Status]**, **[Device Info]**, and **[Counter]** tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

2. **Printer: Print Jobs**

Allows you to display list of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print jobs.

3. **Job**

Display all print files.

4. **Address Book**

User information can be registered, displayed, changed, and deleted.

5. **Configuration**

Make system settings for the printer, interface settings, and security.

6. **Reset Device**

Click to reset the printer. If a print job is being processed, the printer will be reset after the print job is completed. This button is located on Top Page.

7. **Reset Printer Job**

Click to reset current print jobs and print jobs in queue. This button is located on Top Page.

Access in the Administrator Mode

Follow the procedure below to access Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.

1. **On Top Page, click [Login].**

   The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

2. **Enter your login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

Displaying Web Image Monitor Help

When using Help for the first time, clicking either **[Help]** in the header area or the icon marked "?" in the display area makes the following screen appear, in which you can view Help in two different ways, as shown below:

❖ **Viewing Help on our Web site**
Downloading Help to your computer

❖ **Downloading and Checking Help**
You can download Help to your computer. To view Help without connecting to the Internet, enter the path to your local Help files in your browser's URL bar.

Note

❒ By clicking **[Help]** in the header area, the contents of Help appear. You can view Help for a setting by clicking "?", the Help icon, in the display area.

Downloading Help

1. **In the [OS] list, select the operating system.**
2. **In the [Language] list, select the language.**
3. **Click [Download].**
4. **Download Help by following the instructions on the screen.**
5. **Store the downloaded compressed file in a location, and then decompress the file.**

   To view the downloaded Web Image Monitor Help, set the path to the location of the decompressed file.

Linking the URL of the Help File to the Help Button

You can link the URL of the help file on a computer or Web server to the **[Help]** button.

1. **Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.**
2. **In the menu area, click [Configuration].**
3. **Click [Webpage].**
4. **In the [URL] box, enter the URL of the help file.**

   For example, if you saved the file to a Web server, and the URL of the index file is "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/EN/index.html", enter "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".
5. **Click [OK].**

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can monitor the network printers. Also, you can change the configuration of the network interface board using TCP/IP or IPX/SPX.

Important

❒ IPv6 cannot be used on this function.

❖ **Protocol stack provided with Operating System**

- Windows 95/98/Me
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  NetWare
  NetWare Client32 for Windows 95
  IntraNetWare Client for Windows 95
  Novell Client for Windows 95/98/Me
- Windows 2000
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  NetWare
  Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP
- Windows Server 2003/2003 R2
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
- Windows XP
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP
- Windows NT 4.0
  TCP/IP
  IPX/SPX
  Client Service for NetWare
  NetWare Client32 for Windows NT
  IntraNetWare Client for Windows NT
  Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP

❖ **Available operations**

The following functions are available:

- Printer Information function
  - Display the network settings and detailed information of the printer.
  - Display the number of pages printed under each user code.
  - Display the status of print jobs sent from computers.
  - Change the printer network settings.

- Device Settings function
  - Lock some of the setting items on the control panel so that they cannot be changed using the control panel.
  - Select type of paper loaded in the paper trays.
- Energy Saver function
  - Enable or disable the Energy Saver mode.
- System Status function
- Display the information such as when paper is depleted during printing on a computer.
- Groups function
  - Monitor multiple printers at the same time. When there are multiple printers to manage, you can create groups and classify the printers to facilitate management.
  - You can customize printer status according to groups, and send status notification e-mail to a computer.

Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Follow the procedure below to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

1. **Quit all applications currently running.**
2. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The installer starts.
3. **Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

   The default interface language is English.
4. **Click [SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin] installation, and then click [Next >].**
5. **The software [License Agreement] appears in the License Agreement dialog box.**

   After reading through its contents, click **[Yes]** if you agree, and then click **[Next >]**.
6. **Follow the instructions on the screen.**

   A message appears when the installation is complete.
7. **Click [OK].**

Note

- ❒ Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch "Setup.exe" located on the CD-ROM root directory.
- ❒ If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, restart the computer and continue the configuration.
- ❒ SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin supports following languages: Czech, Danish, German, English, Spanish, French, Italian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese , Finnish, Swedish, Chinese Simple and Chinese Traditional.

Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration

Follow the procedure below to change the network interface board configuration using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].**

   A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

   NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instruction on the screen.

5. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

6. **Configure settings using Web Image Monitor.**

7. **Click [Logout].**

8. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

9. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Reference

p.185 “Using Web Image Monitor”.

Locking the Menus on the Printer's Control Panel

Follow the procedure below to lock the menus on the printer's control panel.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **Select a printer.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [System].**

   A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the user name and password, consult your administrator.

   The **[System]** page of Web Image Monitor appears.

6. **Select [Level 1] or [Level 2] on [Protect Printer Display Panel] in "General Settings".**

7. **Click [OK].**

8. **Click [Logout].**

9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

10. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

❒ For details about setting items, see Help in the **[Device Settings]** on **[Configuration]** page.

Changing the Paper Type

Follow the procedure below to change the paper type.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [Paper].**

   A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

   The **[Paper]** page of Web Image Monitor appears.

6. **Enter required setting items, and then click [OK].**

7. **Click [OK].**

8. **Click [Logout].**

9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

10. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

❒ For details about setting items, see Help in the **[Device Settings]** on **[Configuration]** page.

Managing User Information

Follow the procedure below to manage the user's information using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Prints jobs can be managed and functions restricted by user codes.

Starting User Management Tool

Follow the procedure below to start User Management Tool.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a printer you want to manage.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, click [User Management Tool].**

   The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

5. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [OK].**

   For details about the user name and password, consult your administrator.

   User Management Tool starts.

Note

❒ For details about User Management Tool, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Displaying the Number of Sheets Printed

Follow the procedure below to display the number of sheets printed under each user code.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.**

   The number of pages printed under each user code appears.

3. **Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Exporting the information about the number of pages printed

Follow the procedure below to export the information of the number of pages printed under each user code as a ".csv" file.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.**
3. **On the [File] menu, click [Export User Statistics List].**
4. **Specify the save location and file name, and then click [Save].**
5. **Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Resetting the number of pages printed to 0

Follow the procedure below to reset the number of pages printed under each user code to 0.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.**
3. **Click the user whose information you want to reset.**
4. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Reset User Counters].**
5. **Select the check box of the items you want to reset, and then click [OK].**
   A confirmation message appears.
6. **Click [OK].**
7. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].**
   Changes are applied to information on the **[User Counter Information]** tab.
8. **Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Restricting Functions

Follow the procedure below to restrict use of individual functions.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.**
3. **On the [Edit] menu of User Management Tool, click [Restrict Access To Device].**
4. **Select the check box of the functions you want to restrict.**
5. **Click [OK].**

   A confirmation message appears.
6. **Click [Yes].**

   The settings are applied.

Setting Applicable Functions to New Users

Follow the procedure below to add new users and set functions applicable to them.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **Click the [Access Control List] tab of [User Management Tool].**
3. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Add New User].**
4. **Enter the user code and user name.**
5. **Select the check box of the functions applicable to the new user.**

   If the check boxes are unavailable, there is no restriction to use that function. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
6. **Click [OK].**

   The new user is added.
7. **On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].**

   The settings are applied.
8. **Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.**

Note

❒ For details about setting restrictions, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Configuring the Energy Saver Mode

Follow the procedure below to configure Energy Saver mode.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **Select the printer whose settings you want to make.**

   To make settings for all printers in the selected group, select no printer.

4. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Energy Save Mode], point to [Set Individually] to make the settings for only the selected printer or point to [Set By Group] to make the settings for all printers in the selected group, and then click [On] or [Off].**

5. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

❒ For details about the setting value for Energy Saver mode, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Setting a Password

Follow the procedure below to set a password.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].**

   A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

   NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instruction on the screen.

5. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the user name and password, consult your administrator.

   Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

6. **Click [Configuration].**

7. **On the [Device Settings], click [Program/Change Administrator], and then change the settings.**

8. **Click [OK].**

9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

10. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Checking the Printer Status

Follow the procedure below to check printer status.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   The status of printers is indicated by icons in the list.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **To obtain status details, click the printer in the list, and then click [Open] on the [Device] menu.**

   The printer status appears in the dialog box.

4. **Click [System] or [Printer].**

   The printer status appears in the dialog box.

5. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

❒ For details about status icons and items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Changing Names and Comments

Follow the procedure below to change the names and comments of the printer.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3]. A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.**

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   The status of printers is indicated by icons in the list.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **Select a printer in the list.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].**

   A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

   NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instruction on the screen.

5. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

6. **Click [Configuration].**

7. **Click [System] on the [Device Settings] area, and then change the settings.**

8. **Click [OK].**

   - In the **[Device Name]** box, enter a device name on the printer using up to 31 characters.
   - In the **[Comment]** box, enter a comment on the printer using up to 31 characters.

9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

10. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Viewing and Deleting Spool Print Jobs

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

   A list of printer using the selected protocol appears.

   Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

   If you are using IPv4 SNMP v3, enter the user authentication.

3. **Select a printer in the list, and then click [Spool Printing Job List(Printer)] on the [Tools] menu.**

   A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

4. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

   [Spool Printing Job List] appears in the Web Image Monitor.

   To delete the Spool Printing Job, select the document you want to delete and then click **[Delete]**.

   Note

   ❒ To display **[Spool Printing Job List]**, spool must be set to **[Active]** on Web Image Monitor in advance.

   ❒ For details, see Help in the **[Spool Printing Job List]** area.

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

To view the status of printers using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, configure SmartDeviceMonitor for Client beforehand.

Monitoring Printers

Follow the procedure below to monitor the printer using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1. **Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, point to [Properties], and then click [Option...].**

   The **[SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Options]** dialog box appears.

2. **Select the printer you want to monitor, and then select the [To be Monitored] check box in the Monitoring Information Settings area.**

   To display the printer status in the task tray using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, select the **[Displayed on Task Bar]** check box.

3. **Click [OK].**

   The dialog box closes and the configured printer is monitored.

Note

❒ For details about status icons, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

Checking the Printer Status

Follow the procedure below to check printer status using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.**

2. **For status details, right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then click the printer.**

   The printer status appears in the dialog box.

Note

❒ For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

When using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, note the following:

- The network printer can only receive one print job from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client at a time. While the network printer is printing, another user cannot access it until the job is finished. In this case, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client tries to access the network printer until the retry interval expires.
- If SmartDeviceMonitor for Client cannot access the network printer and times out, it will stop sending the print job. In this case, you should cancel the paused status from the print queue window. SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will resume access to the network printer. You can delete the print job from the print queue window, but canceling a print job printed by the network printer might cause the next job sent from another user to be incorrectly printed.
- If a print job sent from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is interrupted and the network printer cancels the job because something went wrong, send the print job again.
- Print jobs sent from another computer do not appear in the print queue window, regardless of protocol.
- If various users send print jobs using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to network printers, the printing order might not be the same as that in which the jobs were sent.
- An IP address cannot be used for the IPP port name because the IP address is used for the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port name.
- When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentification is issued, enter "https://(printer's address)/". Internet Explorer must be installed on your computer. Use the highest version. Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is recommended.
- If the **[Security Alert]** dialog box appears when accessing the printer using IPP to create or configure an IPP port, or when printing, install the certificate. To select the certificate store location when using Certificate Import Wizard, click **[Place all certificates in the following store]**, and then click **[Local Computer]** under **[Trusted Root Certification Authorities]**.

Printer Status Notification by E-Mail

Whenever a paper tray becomes empty or paper jams, a notification e-mail is sent to the registered addresses.

You can make the timing and content settings for notification e-mail.

- Call Service
- Out of Toner
- Toner Almost Empty
- Replacement Required: Maintenance Kit
- Paper Misfeed
- Cover Open
- Out of Paper
- Almost Out of Paper
- Paper Tray Error
- Output Tray Full
- Unit Connection Error
- Duplex Unit Error
- Waste Toner Bottle is Full
- Waste Toner Bottle is Almost Full
- Replace Cleaning Web Soon
- File Storage Memory Full Soon
- Log Error

1 Open a Web browser, and then enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentication is issued, enter "https://(printer's address)/".

2 Click [Login] on Top Page of Web Image Monitor.

The window for entering the login user name and password appears.

3 Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

4 **In the menu area, click [Configuration].**

5 **Click [E-mail] in "Device Settings".**

6 **Make the following settings:**

- Items in the Reception column: Make the necessary settings for sending and receiving e-mail.
- Items in the SMTP column: Configure the SMTP server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items. You can also perform mail authentication for the SMTP server.
- Items in the **[POP before SMTP]** column: Configure the POP server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items. You can also perform mail authentication for the POP server.
- Items in the **[POP3/IMAP4]** column: Configure the POP3 or IMAP4 server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items.
- Items in the **[E-mail Communication Port]** column: Configure the port to be used for access to the mail server.
- Items in the **[E-mail Notification Account]** column: Specify these items if you want to use on-demand e-mail notification.

7 **Click [OK].**

Auto E-mail Notification

1. **In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [Auto E-mail Notification] in "Device Settings".**

   The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

2. **Make the following settings:**
   - Items in the **[Notification Message]** column: You can set this according to your needs, for example, the printer's location, service representative contact information.
   - Items in the **[Groups to Notify]** column: E-mail notification addresses can be grouped as required.
   - Items in the **[Select Groups/Items to Notify]** column: Select groups for each notification type, such as printer status and error.
     To make detailed settings for these items, **[Edit]** next to **[Detailed Settings of Each Item]**.

3. **Click [OK].**

4. **Click [Logout].**

5. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

On-demand E-mail Notification

1. **In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [On-demand E-mail Notification] in "Device Settings".**

   The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

2. **Make the following settings:**
   - **[Notification Subject]**: Enter a text string to be added to the subject line of return e-mails.
   - Items in **[Notification Message]** column: You can set this according to your needs, for example, the printer's location, service representative contact information.
   - Items in the **[Access Restriction to Information]** column: Select whether to restrict accesses based on a specific category of information.
   - Items in the **[Receivable E-mail Address/Domain Name Settings]** column: Enter an e-mail address or domain name to use for requesting information by e-mail and to receive its return e-mail.

3. **Click [OK].**

4. **Click [Logout].**

5. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

Mail authentication

You can configure mail authentication to prevent illegal use of the mail server.

❖ SMTP Authentication

Specify SMTP authentication.
When mail is sent to the SMTP server, authentication is performed using the SMTP AUTH protocol by prompting the mail originator to enter the user name and password. This prevents illegal use of the SMTP server.

① In the menu area, click **[Configuration]**, and then click **[E-mail]** in "Device Settings".

② Make the following settings:

- SMTP Authentication: Enable or disable SMTP authentication.
- SMTP Auth. E-mail Address: Enter the e-mail address.
- SMTP Auth. User Name: Enter the SMTP account name.
- SMTP Auth. Password: To set or change the password for SMTP AUTH.
- SMTP Auth. Encryption: Select whether to encrypt the password or not.
  [Auto Select]: If the authentication method is PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAM-MD5, or DIGEST-MD5.
  [Active]: If the authentication method is CRAM-MD5 or DIGEST-MD5.
  [Inactive]: If the authentication method is PLAIN or LOGIN.

③ Click **[OK]**.

④ Click **[Logout]**.

⑤ Quit Web Image Monitor.

❖ POP before SMTP Authentication

Select whether to log on to the POP3 server before sending e-mail.

① In the menu area, click **[Configuration]**, and then click **[E-mail]** in "Device Settings".

② Make the following settings:

- POP before SMTP: Enable or disable POP before SMTP.
- POP E-mail Address: Enter the e-mail address.
- POP User Name: Enter the POP account name.
- POP Password: To set or change the POP password.
- Timeout setting after POP Auth.: Enter the time available before connecting to the SMTP server after logging on to the POP server.

③ Click **[OK]**.

④ Click **[Logout]**.

⑤ Quit Web Image Monitor.

Sending On-demand E-mail

To use on-demand e-mail notification, perform the following configuration tasks in Web Image Monitor.

1. **In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [E-mail] in "Device Settings".**

2. **Make the following settings:**
   - E-mail Notification E-mail Address: Enter the address using alphanumeric characters.
   - Receive E-mail Notification: Specify whether to use on-demand e-mail notification.
   - E-mail Notification User Name: Enter the administrator's user name as the mail originator name.
   - E-mail Notification Password: Enter the password of the mail notification user.

3. **Click [OK].**

4. **Click [Logout].**

5. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

❖ **Format of on-demand e-mail messages**

To use mail notification, you need to send an on-demand e-mail message to this printer. Using your mail software, enter the following:

Item	Description
Subject (Referred to as Subject)	Enter a request regarding the device. For details, see the table below.
From (Referred to as From)	Specify a valid mail address. The device information will be sent to the address specified here.

Note

❒ A mail message must be within 10 KB in size.

❒ E-mail may be incomplete if sent immediately after power on.

❖ **Subject field**

Format: devicestatus?parametername=parameter**[&=parameter][& =parameter]**...

Note

❒ The Subject field is case-insensitive.

❒ Parameter names can be written in any order.

❖ Subject field coding examples

Item	Description
devicestatus?request=sysconfig& format=text& lang=en	The device's system configuration information will be sent in an English text format.
devicestatus?request=sysconfig	The device's system configuration information will be sent in a preset format and language.

❖ Parameters

Item	Meaning	Description
request	Information to be obtained	Mandatory
format	Mail format	Mail will be sent in the format preset for each mail address.
lang	Language for mail body	Mail will be sent in the language preset for each mail address.

❖ Parameters specifying the information to be obtained

Information to be obtained	Parameter
System configuration information	ysconfi
Network configuration information	netconfig
Printer configuration information	prtconfig
Supplies information	supply
Device status information	status

❖ Parameters specifying the mail format

Mail format	Parameter
Text	text
HTML	html
XML	xml

Note

❒ HTML and XML can be selected for subject field, but output is text only.

❖ Parameters specifying the language for mail body

Language for mail body	Parameter
English	en
French	fr
German	de
Italian	it
Spanish	es
Dutch	nl
Russian	ru
Portuguese	pt

Remote Maintenance by telnet

Important

- ❒ Remote Maintenance should be password-protected so that access is allowed to administrators only.
- ❒ The password is the same as the one of Web Image Monitor administrator. When the password is changed using "mshell", other passwords change also.
- ❒ Some commands cannot be used depending on your printer.

Using telnet

Follow the procedure below to use telnet.

Important

- ❒ Only one user at a time can log on to perform remote maintenance.

1 **Use the IP address or the host name of the printer to start telnet.**

```
% telnet "IP_address"
```

2 **Enter your user name and password.**

Contact your administrator for information about the settings.

3 **Enter a command.**

4 **Quit telnet.**

```
msh> logout
```

The configuration message about saving the changes appears.

5 **Enter "yes" to save the changes, and then press the 【OK】 key.**

If you do not want to save the changes, enter "no", and then press the 【OK】 key. To make further changes, enter "return" at the command line, and then press the 【OK】 key.

Note

- ❒ If the message "Can not write NVRAM information" appears, the changes are not saved. Repeat the procedure above.
- ❒ When the changes are saved, the network interface board is reset automatically with that changes.
- ❒ When the network interface board resets, the print job in print process will be printed. However, print jobs in queue will be canceled.

access

Use the "access" command to view and configure access control. You can also specify two or more access ranges.

❖ View settings

```
msh> access
```

❖ IPv4 Configuration

```
msh> access [×] range "start-address end-address"
```

- **[**×**]** represents a target number between 1 and 5. (Up to five access ranges can be registered and selected.)

Example: to specify accessible IPv4 addresses between 192.168.0.10 and 192.168.0.20:

```
msh> access 1 range6 192.168.0.10 192.168.0.20
```

❖ IPv6 Configuration

```
msh> access [×] range6 "start-address end-address"
```

- **[**×**]** represents a target number between 1 and 5. (Up to five access ranges can be registered and selected.)

Example: to specify accessible IPv6 addresses between 2001:DB8::100 and 2001:DB8::200.
msh> access 1 range6 2001:DB8::100 2001:DB8::200

❖ IPv6 access mask Configuration

```
msh> access [×] mask6 "base-address prefixlen"
```

- **[**×**]** represents a target number between 1 and 5. (Up to five access ranges can be registered and selected.)

Example: to specify accessible IPv6 addresses to 2001:DB8::/32

```
msh> access 1 mask6 2001:DB8:: 32
```

❖ Access control initialization

```
msh> access flush
```

- Use the "flush" command to restore the default settings so that all access ranges become "0.0.0.0" for IPv4, and "::" for IPv6.

Note

❒ The access range restricts computers from use of the machine by IP address. If you do not need to restrict printing, make the setting "0.0.0.0" for IPv4, and "::" for IPv6.

❒ Valid ranges must be from lower (start address) to higher (end address).

❒ If you are running IPv4 or IPv6, up to five access ranges can be registered and selected.

❒ IPv6 can register and select the range and the mask for each access ranges.

❒ IPv6 mask ranges between 1 - 128 can be selected.

❒ Up to five access ranges can be specified. The entry is invalid if the target number is omitted.

❒ You cannot send print jobs, or access Web Image Monitor and diprint from a restricted IP address.

autonet

Use the "autonet" command to view and configure AutoNet parameters.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays the current AutoNet settings:

```
msh> autonet
```

❖ **Configuration**

You can configure AutoNet settings.

```
msh> autonet {on|off}
```

- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".

❖ **Current interface priority configuration display**

```
msh> autonet priority
```

❖ **Interface priority configuration**

```
msh> autonet priority "interface_name"
```

- You can give interface's AutoNet parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

Note

❒ If an interface is not selected, the current interface connection settings remain in effect.

❒ For details about AutoNet, refer to autonet parameters.

bonjour (rendezvous)

Use the "bonjour (rendezvous)" command to display bonjour (rendezvous)-related settings.

❖ **View settings**

Bonjour settings are displayed.

```
msh> bonjour
```

❖ **Bonjour service name setting**

You can specify the bonjour service name.

```
msh> bonjour cname "computer name"
```

- The computer name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.

❖ **Bonjour Installation location information setting**

You can enter information about the location where the printer is installed.

```
msh> bonjour location "location"
```

- Information about location can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

❖ **Setting order of priority for each protocol**

- diprint

  ```
  msh> bonjour diprint [0-99]
  ```

- lpr

  ```
  msh> bonjour lpr [0-99]
  ```

- ipp

  ```
  msh> bonjour ipp [0-99]
  ```

You can specify the order of priority for "diprint", "lpr", and "ipp". Smaller numbers indicate higher priority.

❖ **IP TTL setting**

```
msh> bonjour ip ttl {1-255}
```

You can specify the IP TTL (the number of routers a packet can pass through).

Note

❒ The default is 255.

❖ **Resetting the computer name and location information**

You can reset the computer name and location information.

```
msh> bonjour clear {cname | location}
```

- cname
  Reset the computer name. The default computer name will be displayed when the computer is restarted.
- location
  Reset the location information. The previous location information will be deleted.

❖ **Interface configuration**

```
msh> bonjour linklocal "interface_name"
```

- If many types of interface are installed, configure the interface that communicates with linklocal address.
- If the connected computer's IP address is a link local address specified by the DHCP's Autonet, and multiple interfaces are connected to the printer, you can select an interface to communicate through.
- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is automatically selected.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ **Selecting the IPP port number**

```
msh> bonjour ippport {ipp | ssl}
```

- Appears when SSL is enabled.
- If the "ipp" is selected, the port number is set to "631". If the "ssl" is selected, the port number is set to "443".

devicename

Use the "devicename" command to display and change the printer name.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> devicename
```

❖ **Printer name configuration**

```
msh> devicename name "string"
```

- Enter a printer name using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Set single names for each printer.

❖ **Printer name initialization**

```
msh> device name clearname
```

- Reset the printer name to its default.

dhcp

Use the "dhcp" command to configure DHCP settings.

❖ View settings

The following command displays the current DHCP settings.

```
msh> dhcp
```

❖ Configuration

You can configure DHCP.

```
msh> dhcp "interface_name" {on|off}
```

- Click {on} to enable DHCP. Click {off} to disable DHCP.
- If the DNS server address and domain name are obtained from DHCP, be sure to click {on}.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ Current interface priority configuration display

```
msh> dhcp priority
```

❖ Interface priority configuration

```
msh> dhcp priority "interface_name"
```

- You can select which interface has DHCP parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.

❖ DNS server address selection

```
msh> dhcp dnsaddr {dhcp | static}
```

- Specify whether to obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server or use the address set by a user.
- To obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the address set by a user, specify "static".

❖ Domain name selection

```
msh> dhcp domainname {dhcp | static}
```

- Specify whether to obtain the domain name from the DNS server or use the domain name set by a user.
- To obtain the domain name from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the domain name set by a user, specify "static".

diprint

The direct printing port enables direct printing from a network-connected computer. Use the "diprint" command to change direct printing port settings.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays the current direct printing port settings:

```
msh> diprint
```

Example output:

```
port 9100
timeout=300(sec)
bidirect on
con multi
apl async
```

- The "port" specifies the port number of the direct printing port.
- The "bidirect" setting indicates whether the direct printing port is bidirectional or not.

❖ **Setting timeout**

```
msh> diprint timeout [30~65535]
```

- You can specify the timeout interval to use when the printer is expecting data from the network.
- The default is 300 seconds.

❖ **Specifying the number of concurrent connections**

```
msh> diprint conn {multi | single}
```

- The above command specifies the number of concurrent diprint connections. Specify "multi" for multiple connections or "single" for a single connection.
- The default is "multi".

dns

Use the "dns" command to configure or display DNS (Domain Name System) settings.

❖ View settings

The following command displays current DNS settings:

```
msh> dns
```

❖ IPv4 DNS server configuration

The following command enables or disables the IPv4 DNS server address:

```
msh> dns "number" server "server address"
```

The following command displays a configuration using the IP address 192.168.15.16 on a DNS 1 server:

```
msh> dns 1 server 192.168.15.16
```

- You can register IPv4 DNS Server address.
- You can register up to three IPv4 DNS server numbers.
- You cannot use "255.255.255.255" as the DNS server address.

❖ IPv6 DNS server configuration

The following command enables or disables the IPv6 DNS server address:

```
msh> dns "number" server6 "server address"
```

- You can register IPv6 DNS Server address.
- You can register up to three IPv6 DNS server numbers.

❖ Dynamic DNS function setting

```
msh> dns "interface_name" ddns {on|off}
```

- You can set the dynamic DNS function "active" or "inactive".
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ Specifying the record overlap operation

msh> dns overlap {update|add}

- You can specify operations performed when records overlap.
- update
  To delete old records and register new records.
- add
  To add new records and store the old records.
- When CNAME overlaps, it is always changed, irrespective of settings.

❖ CNAME registration

msh> dns cname {on|off}

- You can specify whether to register CNAME.
- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.
- The CNAME registered is the default name beginning with rnp. CNAME cannot be changed

❖ A records registration

msh> dns arecord {dhcp|own}

- dhcp
  You can specify the method of registering an A record when the dynamic DNS function is enabled and DHCP is used.
- own
  To register an A record using the printer as the DNS client.
  The DNS server address and the domain name already designated are used for the registration.

❖ Record updating interval settings

msh> dns interval "time"

- You can specify the interval after which records are updated when using the dynamic DNS function.
- The updating interval is specified hourly. It can be entered between 1 and 255 hours.
- The default is 24 hours.

domainname

Use the "domainname" command to display or configure the domain name settings.

You can configure the Ethernet interface or IEEE 802.11b interface.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays the current domain name:

```
msh> domainname
```

❖ **Interface domain configuration**

```
msh> domainname "interface_name"
```

❖ **Setting the Domain Name**

```
msh> domainname "interface_name" name "domain name"
```

- A domain name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- The Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11b interface will have the same domain name.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ **Deleting the Domain Name**

```
msh> domainname "interface_name" clear "name"
```

help

Use the "help" command to display the available command list and the procedures for using those commands.

❖ **Command list display**

```
msh> help
```

❖ **Display of procedure for using commands**

```
msh> help "command_name"
```

hostname

Use the “hostname” command to change the printer name.

❖ View settings

```
msh> hostname
```

❖ IPv4 Configuration

```
msh> hostname "interface_name" "printer_name"
```

- Enter the printer name using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- You cannot use a printer name starting with “RNP” or “rnp”
- The Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11b interface will have the same printer name.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ Initializing the printer name for each interface

```
msh>hostname "interface_name" clear "name"
```

ifconfig

Use the "ifconfig" command to view and configure TCP/IP (IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, default gateway address) for the printer.

❖ View settings

```
msh> ifconfig
```

❖ IPv4 Configuration

```
msh> ifconfig "interface_name" "parameter" "address"
```

- If you did not enter an interface name, it is automatically set to the Ethernet interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b Interface

The following explains how to configure an IPv4 address 192.168.15.16 on Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether 192.168.15.16
```

❖ IPv6 Configuration

```
msh> ifconfig ether inet6 "interface_name" "prefixlen"
```

The following explains how to configure a IPv6 address to 2001:DB8::100 with prefix length 64 on the Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether inet6 2001:DB8::100 64
```

❖ Netmask configuration

```
msh> ifconfig "interface_name" netmask "address"
```

The following explains how to configure a subnet mask 255.255.255.0 on Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether netmask 255.255.255.0
```

❖ Broadcast address configuration

```
msh> ifconfig "interface_name" broadcast "address"
```

❖ Changing the Interface

```
msh> ifconfig "interface" up
```

You can specify either the Ethernet interface or IEEE 802.11b interface when using the optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Note

- ❒ To get the above addresses, contact your administrator.
- ❒ Use the default configuration if you cannot obtain setting addresses.
- ❒ The IP address, subnet mask and broadcast address are the same as that for the ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11b interface.
- ❒ TCP/IP configuration is the same for both Ethernet and IEEE 802.11 interface. If interfaces are changed, the new interface inherits the configuration.
- ❒ Use "0x" as the initial two letters of a hexadecimal address.

info

Use the "info" command to display printer information such as paper tray, output tray, and printer language.

❖ **Printer information display**

```
msh> info
```

Reference

p.254 "Getting Printer Information over the Network".

ipp

Use the "ipp" command to view and configure IPP settings.

❖ **Viewing settings**

The following command displays the current IPP settings:

```
msh> ipp
```

❖ **IPP timeout configuration**

Specify how many seconds the computer waits before canceling an interrupted print job. The time can be entered between 30 to 65535 seconds.

```
msh> ipp timeout [30 - 65535]
```

❖ **IPP user authorization configuration**

Use IPP user authorization to restrict users to print with IPP. The default is "off".

```
msh> ipp auth {basic|digest|off}
```

- User authorization settings are "basic" and "digest".
- Use "off" to remove a user's authorization.
- If user authorization is specified, register a user name. You can register up to 10 users.

❖ **IPP user configuration**

Configure IPP users according to the following messages:

```
msh> ipp user
```

The following message appears:

```
msh> Input user number (1 to 10):
```

Enter the number, user name, and password.

```
msh> IPP user name:user1
msh> IPP password:*******
```

After configuring the settings, the following message appears:

```
User configuration changed.
```

ipv6

Use the “ipv6” command to display and configure IPv6 settings

❖ View Setting

```
msh> ipv6
```

❖ IPv6 stateless address

```
msh> ipv6 stateless {on|off}
```

- If "on" is selected, IPv6 requests information required for maintaining stateful connection to the router for as long as the printer power is turned on. This setting allows information from the router to be obtained constantly, and periodically refreshes the effective period of the stateless address.

lpr

Use the “lpr” command to view and configure LPR settings.

❖ View Setting

```
msh> lpr
```

❖ Checking host name when deleting the job

```
msh> lpr chkhost {on|off}
```

- If "on" is selected, you can delete print jobs only from the IP address of the host that sent the print job. If LPR is disabled, you can also delete print jobs sent from the IP addresses other than that of the host.

netware

Use the "netware" command to configure the NetWare settings such as the print server name or file server name.

❖ **Netware Printer Server Names**

```
msh> netware pname "character string"
```

- Enter the NetWare print server name using up to 47 characters.

❖ **Netware File Server Names**

```
msh> netware fname
```

- Enter the NetWare file server name using up to 47 characters.

❖ **Encap type**

```
msh> netware encap {802.3|802.2|snap|ethernet2|auto}
```

❖ **Remote Printer Number**

```
msh> netware rnum {0-254}
```

❖ **Timeout**

```
msh> netware timeout {3-255}
```

❖ **Printer server mode**

```
msh> netware mode pserver
msh> netware mode ps
```

❖ **Remote printer mode**

```
msh> netware mode rprinter
msh> netware mode rp
```

❖ **NDS context name**

```
msh> netware context "character string"
```

❖ **SAP interval**

```
msh> netware "sap_interval"
```

❖ **Setting login mode for file server**

```
msh> netware login server
```

❖ **Setting login mode for NDS tree**

```
msh> netware login tree
```

❖ **Setting login mode for NDS tree name**

```
msh> netware tree "NDS name"
```

❖ **File transfer protocol**

```
msh> netware trans {ipv4pri|ipxpri|ipv4|ipx}
```

If you do not specify the protocol, the current setting is displayed.

Protocol	Set Protocol
ipv4pri	IPv4+IPX(IPv4)
ipxpri	IPv4+IPX(IPX)
ipv4	IPv4
ipx	IPX

passwd

Use the "passwd" command to change the remote maintenance password.

❖ **Changing the Password**

```
msh> passwd
```

- Enter the current password.
- Enter the new password.
- Renter the new password to confirm it.

❖ **Changing the Password of the administrators using the Supervisor**

```
msh> passwd {Administrator ID}
```

- You can delete the administrator password or set up a new one.
- Enter the new password.
- Renter the new password to confirm it.

Note

❒ Be sure not to forget or lose the password.

❒ The password can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters. Passwords are case-sensitive. For example, "R" is not the same as "r".

pathmtu

Use the "pathmtu" command to display and configure the PathMTU Discovery service function.

❖ View Setting

```
msh> pathmtu
```

❖ Enabling / disabling the PathMTU Discovery service

```
msh> pathmtu{on|off}
```

- The default is "on".
- If the MTU size of the sent data is larger than the router's MTU, the router will declare it impassable, and communication fails. If this happens, selecting the "pathmtu" to "off" optimizes the MTU size and prevents data output failure.
- Depending on the environment, information might not be obtained from the router, and communication will fail. If this happens, select the "pathmtu" to "off".

prnlog

Use the “prnlog” command to obtain printer log information.

❖ Print logs display

```
msh> prnlog
```

- Displays 16 previous print jobs.

```
msh> prnlog "ID Number"
```

- Specify the ID number of the displayed print log information to display additional details about a print job.

Note

❒ p.254 “Getting Printer Information over the Network”.

route

Use the “route” command to view and control the routing table.

❖ All route information display

```
msh> route get "destination"
```

- Specify the IPv4 address to destination.
  "0.0.0.0" cannot be specified as destination address.
- If you do not specify a destination address, all the information about the router is displayed.

❖ Enabling/disabling Specified IPv4 Destination

```
msh> route active {host|net} "destination" {on | off}
```

- You can turn the specified destination on or off. Host becomes the default setting.

❖ Adding IPv4 Routing Table

```
msh> route add {host|net} "destination" "gateway"
```

- Adds a host or network route to “destination”, and a gateway address to “gateway” in the table.
- Specify the IPv4 address to destination and gateway.
- Host becomes the default setting.

❖ Setting Default IPv4 Gateway

```
msh> route add default gateway
```

❖ Deleting specified IPv4 destination from Routing Table

```
msh> route delete {host|net} "destination"
```

- Host becomes the default setting.
- IPv4 address of destination can be specified.

❖ Setting IPv6 Default Gateway

```
msh> route add6 default "gateway"
```

❖ Adding a specified IPv6 destination to Routing Table

```
msh> route add6 "destination" "prefixlen" "gateway"
```

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

❖ Deleting a specified IPv6 destination from Routing Table

```
msh> route delete6 "destination" "prefixlen"
```

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

❖ **Display information about a specified IPv6 route information**

```
msh> route get6 "destination"
```

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

❖ **Enabling/disabling a specified IPv6 destination**

```
msh> route active6 "destination" "prefixlen" {on | off}
```

❖ **Route initialization**

```
msh> route flush
```

Note

❒ The maximum number of IPv4 routing tables is 16.

❒ The maximum number of IPv6 routing tables is 2.

❒ Set a gateway address when communicating with devices on an external network.

❒ The same gateway address is shared by all interfaces.

❒ "Prefixlen" is a number between 1 and 128.

set

Use the “set” command to set the protocol information display “active” or “inactive”.

❖ **View settings**

The following command displays protocol information (active/inactive).

```
msh> set ipv4
msh> set ipv6
msh> set appletalk
msh> set netware
msh> set smb
msh> set protocol
```

- When protocol is specified, information about TCP/IP, AppleTalk, Netware, SCSI print, and SMB appears.

```
msh> set usb
msh> set lpr
msh> set lpr6
msh> set ftp
msh> set ftp6
msh> set rsh
msh> set rsh6
msh> set diprint
msh> set diprint6
msh> set web
msh> set snmp
msh> set ssl
msh> set ssl6
msh> set nrs
msh> set rfu
msh> set rfu6
msh> set ipp
msh> set ipp6
msh> set http
msh> set http6
msh> set bonjour
msh> set nbt
msh> set ssdp
msh> set ssh
```

```
msh> set sftp
msh> set sftp6
```

❖ **Configuration**

- Enter “up” enable protocol, and enter “down” to disable protocol. You can set the protocol to “active” or “inactive”.

  ```
  msh> set ipv4 {up | down}
  ```

- If you disable IPv4, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via IPv4.
- Disabling IPv4 also disables lpr, ftp, rsh, diprint, web, snmp, ssl, ipp, http, bonjour, and sftp.

  ```
  msh> set ipv6 {up | down}
  ```

- If you disable IPv6, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via IPv6.
- Disabling IPv6 also disables lpr6, ftp6, rsh6, diprint6, ssl6, ipp6, http6, and sftp6.


```
msh> set appletalk {up | down}
msh> set netware {up | down}
msh> set smb {up | down}
msh> set lpr {up | down}
msh> set lpr6 {up | down}
msh> set ftp {up | down}
msh> set ftp6 {up | down}
msh> set rsh {up | down}
msh> set rsh6 {up | down}
msh> set diprint {up | down}
msh> set diprint6 {up | down}
msh> set web {up | down}
msh> set snmp {up | down}
msh> set ssl {up | down}
msh> set ssl6 {up | down}
```

- If Secured Sockets Layer (SSL, an encryption protocol) function is not available for the printer, you cannot use the function by enabling it.

```
msh> set nrs {up | down}
msh> set rfu {up | down}
msh> set rfu6 {up | down}
msh> set ipp {up | down}
msh> set ipp6 {up | down}
msh> set http {up | down}
msh> set http6 {up | down}
msh> set bonjour {up | down}
msh> set ssh {up | down}
msh> set ssdp {up | down}
msh> set nbt {up | down}
msh> set sftp {up | down}
msh> set sftp6 {up | down}
```

show

Use the "show" command to display network interface board configuration settings.

❖ View settings

```
msh> show
```

- If "-p" is added, you can view settings one by one.

Reference

p.258 "Understanding the Displayed Information".

slp

Use "slp" command to view and configure SLP settings.

```
msh> slp ttl "ttl_val"
```

- You can search the NetWare server using SLP in the PureIP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 and Netware 6/6.5. Using the "slp" command, you can configure the value of TTL which can be used by SLP multicast packet.
- The default value of TTL is 1. A search is executed only within a local segment. If the router does not support multicast, the settings are not available even if the TTL value is increased.
- The acceptable TTL value is between 1 and 255.

smb

Use the "smb" command to configure or delete the computer or workgroup name for SMB.

❖ **Computer Name settings**

```
msh> smb comp "computer name"
```

- Set computer name using up to 15 characters. Names beginning with "RNP" or "rnp" cannot be entered.

❖ **Working Group Name settings**

```
msh> smb group "work group name"
```

- Set workgroup name using up to 15 characters

❖ **Comment settings**

```
msh> smb comment "comment"
```

- Set comment using up to 31 characters

❖ **Notify print job completion**

```
msh> smb notif {on | off}
```

- To notify print job completion, specify "on". Otherwise, specify "off

❖ **Deleting Computer Nam**

```
msh> smb clear comp
```

❖ **Deleting Group Name**

```
msh> smb clear group
```

❖ **Deleting Comment**

```
msh> smb clear comment
```

❖ **View Protocol**

```
msh> smb protocol
```

snmp

Use the "snmp" command to display and edit SNMP configuration settings such as the community name.

❖ View settings

```
msh> snmp
```

- Default access settings 1 is as follows:
  Community name:public
  IPv4 address:0.0.0.0
  IPv6 address:::
  IPX address:00000000:000000000000
  Access type:read-only
  Effective Protocol:IPv4/IPv6/IPX
- Default access settings 2 is as follows:
  Community name:admin
  IPv4 address:0.0.0.0
  IPv4 address:0.0.0.0
  IPX address:00000000:000000000000
  Access type:read-write
  Effective Protocol:IPv4/IPv6/IPX
- If "-p" is added, you can view settings one by one.
- To display the current community, specify its registration number.

❖ Display

```
msh> snmp
```

❖ Community name configuration

```
msh> snmp "number" name "community_name"
```

- You can configure ten SNMP access settings numbered 1-10.
- The printer cannot be accessed from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or SmartDeviceMonitor for Client if "public" is not registered in numbers 1-10. When changing the community name, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and SNMP Setup Tool to correspond with printer settings.
- The community name can be entered using up to 15 characters.

❖ Deleting community name

```
msh> snmp "number" clear name
```

❖ Access type configuration

msh> snmp "number" type "access_type"

Access type	Type of access permission
no	not accessible
read	read only
write	read and write
trap	user is notified of trapmessages

❖ Protocol configuration

msh> snmp {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}

- Use the following command to set protocols "active" or "inactive": If you set a protocol "inactive", all access settings for that protocol are disabled.
- Specify "ipv4" for IPv4, "ipv6" for IPv6, or "ipx" for IPX/SPX.
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- All protocols cannot be turned off concurrently.

❖ Configuration of protocol for each registration number

msh> snmp "number" active {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}

- To change the protocol of access settings, use the following command. However, if you have disabled a protocol with the above command, activating it here has no effect.

❖ Access configuration

msh> snmp "number" {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} "address"

- You can configure a host address according to the protocol used.
- The network interface board accepts requests only from hosts that have IPv4, IPv6, and IPX addresses with access types of "read-only" or "read-write". Enter "0" to have network interface board accept requests from any host without requiring a specific type of access.
- Enter a host address to deliver "trap" access type information to.
- To specify IPv4 or IPv6, enter "ipv4" or "ipv6" followed by a space, and then the IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- To specify IPX/SPX, enter "ipx" followed by a space, the IPX address followed by a decimal, and then the MAC address of the network interface board.

❖ sysLocation configuration

msh> snmp location

❖ Deleting sysLocation

msh> snmp clear location

❖ sysContact setting

msh> snmp contact

❖ **Deleting sysContact**

```
msh> snmp clear contact
```

❖ **SNMP v1v2 function configuration**

```
msh> snmp v1v2 {on|off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **SNMP v3 function configuration**

```
msh> snmp v3 {on|off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **SNMP TRAP configuration**

```
msh> snmp trap {v1|v2|v3} {on|off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable.

❖ **Remote Configuration Authorization configuration**

```
msh> snmp remote {on|off}
```

- Specify “on” to enable, and “off” to disable the SNMP v1v2 setting.

❖ **SNMP v3 TRAP configuration display**

```
msh> snmp v3trap
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5}
```

If a number from 1-5 is entered, settings are displayed for that number only.

❖ **Configuring a sending address for SNMP v3 TRAP**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} "address"
```

❖ **Configuring a sending protocol for SNMP v3 TRAP**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} active {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}
```

❖ **Configuring a user account for SNMP v3 TRAP**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} account "account_name"
```

Enter an account name using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

❖ **Deleting an SNMP v3 TRAP user account**

```
msh> snmp v3trap {1-5} clear account
```

❖ **Configuring an SNMP v3 encryption algorithm**

```
msh> snmp v3auth {md5|sha1}
```

❖ **Configuring SNMP v3 encryption**

```
msh> snmp v3priv {auto|on}
```

Set “auto” for automatic encryption configuration
Set “on” for mandatory encryption configuration.

sntp

The printer clock can be synchronized with a NTP server clock using Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP). Use the "sntp" command to change SNTP settings.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> sntp
```

❖ **NTP server address configuration**

You can specify the IP address of the NTP server.

```
msh> sntp server "IP_address"
```

❖ **Interval configuration**

```
msh> sntp interval "polling_time"
```

- You can specify the interval at which the printer synchronizes with the operator-specified NTP server. The default is 60 minutes.
- The interval can be entered from 0, or between 16 and 10,080 minutes.
- If you set 0, the printer synchronizes with the NTP server only when you turn the printer on. After that, the printer does not synchronize with the NTP server.

❖ **Time-zone configuration**

```
msh> sntp timezone "+/-hour_time"
```

- You can specify the time difference between the printer clock and NTP server clock. The values are between -12:00 and +13:00.

spoolsw

Use the "spoolsw" command to view and configure Job Spool settings.

You can only specify diprint, lpr, ipp, ftp, smb and sftp protocol.

❖ **View settings**

The Job Spool setting appears.

```
msh> spoolsw
```

❖ **Job Spool setting**

```
msh> spoolsw spool {on | off}
```

Note

❒ Specify "on" to enable Job Spool, or "off" to disable it.

❖ **Resetting Job spool setting**

```
msh> spoolsw clear job {on | off}
```

- When the printer power is cut during job spooling, this determines whether to reprint the spooled job.

❖ **Protocol configuration**

```
msh> spoolsw diprint {on | off}
msh> spoolsw lpr {on | off}
msh> spoolsw ipp {on | off}
msh> spoolsw smb {on | off}
msh> spoolsw ftp {on | off}
msh> spoolsw sftp {on | off}
```

- You can specify the settings for diprint, lpr, ipp, smb and sftp.

ssdp

Use the "ssdp" command to view and configure SSDP settings.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> ssdp
```

❖ **Setting effective time**

```
msh> ssdp profile {1801-86400}
```

The default is 10800 seconds.

❖ **Advertise packet TTL settings**

```
msh> ssdp ttl {1-255}
```

The default is 4.

ssh

Use the "ssh" command to view and configure SSH settings.

❖ **View settings**

```
msh> ssh
```

❖ **Data compression communication settings**

```
msh> ssh compression {on|off}
```

The default is "on".

❖ **SSH/SFTP communication port setting**

```
msh> ssh port {22, 1024-65535}
```

The default is 22.

❖ **SSH/SFTP communication timeout setting**

```
msh> ssh timeout {0-65535}
```

The default is 300.

❖ **SSH/SFTP communication login timeout setting**

```
msh> ssh logintimeout {0-65535}
```

The default is 300.

❖ **Setting an open key for SSH/SFTP**

```
msh> ssh genkey {512|768|1024} "character string"
```

Create an open key for SSH/SFTP communication.
Usable characters are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes) other than "0".
The default key length is 1024, and the character string is blank.

❖ **Deleting open key for ssh/sftp communication**

```
msh> ssh delkey
```

Note

❒ If you do not specify a character string, current setting is displayed.

status

Use the "status" command to display the printer status.

❖ **Messages**

```
msh> status
```

Reference

p.254 "Getting Printer Information over the Network".

syslog

Use the "syslog" command to display the information stored in the printer's system log.

❖ **View message**

```
msh> syslog
```

Reference

p.267 "Message List".

upnp

Use the "upnp" command to display and configure the universal plug and play.

❖ **Public URL display**

```
msh> upnp url
```

❖ **Public URL configuration**

```
Msh< upnp url "string"
```

- Enter the URL string in the character string.

web

Use the “web” command to display and configure parameters on Web Image Monitor.

❖ **View Settings**

```
msh> web
```

❖ **URL Configuration**

You can set URLs linked by clicking URL on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web url http://"The URL or IP address you want to
register"/
```

- Specify "1" or "2" for x as the number corresponding to the URL. Up to two URLs can be registered and specified.

❖ **Deleting URLs registered as link destinations**

```
msh> web x clear url
```

Specify “1” or “2” for x as the corresponding number to the URL.

❖ **Link name configuration**

You can enter the name for URL that appears on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web name "Name you want to display"
```

- Specify "1" or "2" for x as the corresponding number to the link name.

❖ **Resetting URL names registered as link destinations**

```
msh> web x clear name
```

- Specify “1” or “2” for x as the number corresponding to the link name.

❖ **Help URL Configuration**

You can set URLs linked by clicking **[Help]** or **[?]** on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web help http://"Help URL or IP address"/help/
```

❖ **Deleting Help URL**

```
msh> web clear help
```

wiconfig

Use the "wiconfig" command to make settings for IEEE 802.11b.

❖ View settings

```
msh> wiconfig
```

❖ View IEEE 802.11b settings

```
msh> wiconfig cardinfo
```

- If IEEE 802.11b is not working correctly, its information is not displayed.

❖ Configuration

```
msh> wiconfig "parameter"
```

Parameter	Value configured
mode {ap|ad-hoc|802.11adhoc}	You can set the infrastructure mode (ap) , the 802.11 ad hoc mode (802.11adhoc), or the ad hoc mode (adhoc). The default is ad hoc mode.
ssid "ID value"	You can make settings for the SSID in the infrastructure mode. Usable characters are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes). An SSID value is set automatically to the nearest access point if no setting is made. If no setting is made for the ad hoc mode, the same value as for the infrastructure mode or an ASSID value is automatically set. The default is blank.
channel frequency "channel no."	You can enable or disable the WEP function. To enable the WEP function, specify **[on]**; to disable it, specify **[off]**. To start the WEP function, enter the correct WEP key. The default is "11".
key "key value" val {1|2|3|4}	You can specify the WEP key when entering in hexadecimal. With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 10 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 26 digit hexadecimals. Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with "val". When a WEP is specified by key, the WEP specified by key phrase is overwritten. To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. Put "0x" on the front of WEP key. You can omit the numbers with "val". The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions. The default is blank.

Parameter	Value configured
keyphrase "phrase" val {1|2|3|4}	You can specify the WEP key when entering in ASCII. With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 10 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 26 digit hexadecimals. Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with "val". When a WEP is specified by key phrase, the WEP specified by key is overwritten. To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. You can omit the numbers with "val". The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions.
encval {1|2|3|4}	You can set an authorization mode when using WEP. The specified value and authorized mode are as follows: open: open system authorized (default) shared: shared key authorized rate
rate [auto|11m|5.5m|2m|1m]	You can set the IEEE 802.11b transmitting speed. The speed you specify here is the speed at which data is sent. You can receive data at any speed. auto: automatically set (default) 11m: 11 Mbps fixed 5.5m: 5.5 Mbps fixed 2m:2 Mbps fixed 1m: 1 Mbps fixed
security {none|wep|wpa}	You can specify the security mode. none: No encryption(default)S wep: WEP encryption wpa: WPA encryption
wpaenc {tkip|ccmp}	You can specify WPA encryption key when using WPA encryption. tkip: TKIP (default) ccmp: CCMP (AES)
wpaauth {wpapsk | wpa}	You can specify the WPA authentication mode when using WPA encryption. wpapsk: WPA-PSK authentication(default) wpa: WPA(802.1X) authentication
psk "character string"	You can specify the Pre-Shared key. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (8 to 63 bytes). The default is blank.

Parameter	Value configured
eap {tls|ttls|leap|peap} {chap|msc-hap|mschapv2|pap|md5|tls}	You can specify the EAP authentication type. tls: EAP-TLS (default) ttls: EAP-TTLS leap: LEAP peap: PEAP chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, md5, or tls are settings for the phase 2 method, and must be set when using EAP-TTLS or PEAP. Do not make these settings when using other EAP authentication types. If you select EAP-TTLS, you can select chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, or md5. If you select PEAP, you can select mschapv2 or tls.
username "character string"	You can specify the login user name for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e(31 bytes) other than "@". The default is blank.
username2 "character string"	You can specify the phase 2 username for EAP-TTLS/PEAP phase 2 authentication. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes) other than "@". The default is blank.
domain "character string"	You can specify the login domain name for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII0x20-0x7e (31 bytes) other than "@". The default is blank.
password "character string"	You can specify the login password for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e(128 bytes). The default is blank.
srvcert {on | off}	You can set the server certificate. The default is "off".
imca {on | off}	You can enable or disable the certificate when the intermediate certificate authority is present. The default is "off".
srvid "character string"	You can set the server ID and subdomain of the certificate server.

Note

❒ You can use this command only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

wins

Use the “wins” command to configure WINS server settings.

❖ Viewing settings

msh> wins

- If the IPv4 address obtained from DHCP differs from the WINS IPv4 address, the DHCP address is the valid address.

❖ Configuration

msh> wins "interface_name" {on | off}

- {on} means "active" and {off} means “inactive”.
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

❖ Address configuration

Use the following command to configure a WINS server IP address:

msh> wins "interface_name" {primary|secondary} "IP address"

- Use the “primary” command to configure a primary WINS server IPv4 address.
- Use the “secondary” command to configure a secondary WINS server IPv4 address.
- Do not use “255.255.255.255” as the IPv4 address.

❖ NBT (NetBIOS over TCP/IP) Scope ID Selection

You can specify the NBT scope ID.

msh> wins "interface_name" scope "scope ID"

- The scope ID can be entered using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11b interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11b interface

SNMP

The SNMP agent operating on UDP and IPX is incorporated into the built-in Ethernet board and optional IEEE 802.11b interface unit of this printer.

Using the SNMP manager, you can get information about the printer.

Important

❒ If you changed the printer's community name, change the configuration of the connected computer accordingly, using SNMP Setup Tool bundled with SmartDevice Monitor for Client. For details, see SNMP Setup Tool Help.

The default community names are **[public]** and **[admin]**.

❖ Start SNMP Setup Tool

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0:
  Click the **[Start]** button.
  Point to SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin on the **[Programs]** menu.
  Click **[SNMP Setup Tool]**.
- Windows XP:
  Click the **[Start]** button.
  Point to SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin on the **[All Programs]** menu.
  Click **[SNMP Setup Tool]**.

❖ Supported MIBs(SNMPv1/v2)

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB

❖ Supported MIBs(SNMPv3)

- MIB-II
- PrinterMIB
- HostResourceMIB
- RicohPrivateMIB
- SNMP-FRAMEWORK-MIB
- SNMP-TARGET-MIB
- SNMP-NOTIFICATION-MIB
- SNMP-USER-BASED-SM-MIB
- SNMP-VIEW-BASED-ACM-MIB

Getting Printer Information over the Network

This section explains details of each item displayed in the printer status and information.

- UNIX: Use the "lpq" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp" and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "status" command.

Messages	Description
Access Restricted	The job was canceled because user have no authority.
Adjusting...	The printer is initializing or calibrating.
Call Service Center	There is a malfunction in the printer.
Canceled	The job is reset.
Canceling Job...	The job is being reset.
Cannot multi-install: SD Card	SD card you are trying to install has already been installed in a different machine.
Card/Counter not inserted	The printer is waiting for prepaid card or key.
Coin or amount not inserted	The printer is waiting for coin to be inserted.
Coin/Key Counter not inserted	The printer is waiting for coin or key counter.
Configuring...	Setting is being changed.
Cooling Down Fusing Unit...	Fusing unit is cooling down.
Cover Open: Finisher	The cover of Finisher is open.
Data Size Error	The data size error occurred.
Empty: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is almost empty.
Energy Saver Mode	The printer is in Energy Saver Mode.
Error	An error has occurred.
Error: Address Book	An error has occurred in the data of the address book.
Error: Command Transmission	An error has occurred in the printer.
Error: DIMM Value	A memory error occurred.
Error: Ethernet Board	An Ethernet board error has occurred.
Error: HDD Board	A hard disk drive board error has occurred.
Error: Memory Switch	A memory error occurred.
Error: Optional Font	An error has occurred in the font file of the printer.
Error: PDL	An error has occurred in the page description language.
Error: Rem. Certificate Renewal	An error has occurred in the remote certificate renewal.

Messages	Description
Error: USB Interface	An error has occurred in the USB interface.
Error: Wireless Board	An error has occurred in the wireless board.
Error: Wireless Card	Wireless card is not inserted during start up, or the IEEE 802.11b interface unit or the wireless card is taken out after start up.
In Use: Finisher	Other functions is using Finisher.
In Use: Input Tray	Other functions is using the input tray.
Key Card not inserted	The printer is waiting for key card to be inserted.
Key Card/Counter not inserted	The printer is waiting for key card or key counter to be inserted.
Key Counter not inserted	The printer is waiting for key counter to be left in it.
Loading Toner...	Toner is being supplied.
Low: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Toner	The black toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Malfunction: Finisher	There is a problem with Finisher.
Malfunction: Output Tray	There is a problem with output tray.
Memory Low: Data Storage	Memory shortage has occurred while the document was being accumulated.
Miscellaneous Error	Other error has occurred.
Mismatch: Paper Size	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size.
Mismatch: Paper Size and Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size and type.
Mismatch: Paper Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected type.
Near Replacing: Black PCU	Prepare the new black photoconductor unit.
Near Replacing: Fusing Unit	Prepare the new fusing unit.
Nearly Full: Waste Toner	Waste toner bottle is nearly full.
No Paper: Selected Tray	There is no paper in specified tray.
Not Detected: Black Toner	Black toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Finisher	Finisher is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Fusing Unit	The fusing unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Input Tray	The paper feed tray is not correctly set.
Not Detected: WasteToner Bottle	Waste toner bottle is not correctly set.
Offline	Printer is offline.

Messages	Description
Operating Thermo-range Error	Exceeded appropriate thermo range.
Panel Off Mode	The printer is in Panel-Off mode.
Paper in Finisher	The paper remains in Finisher.
Prepaid Card not inserted	The printer is waiting for prepaid card to be inserted.
Print Complete	The print was completed.
Printing	Printing is in progress.
Processing	Data is being processed.
Proxy Address/Port Incorrect	Proxy address or Port No. is incorrect.
Ready	The printer is ready to print.
Renewing Remote Certificate	Remote Certificate is Renewing.
Replace Black PCU	It is time to replace the black photoconductor unit.
Replace Fusing Unit	It is time to replace the fusing unit.
SD Card Authentication failed	SD card authentication failed.
SD Card not inserted	SD card is not inserted correctly.
Skipped due to Error	Skipped the error.
Storage Complete	The storage is complete.
Storage Failed	The storage has failed.
Supplies Order Call failed	The supply order call has failed.
Waiting for Job Suspension	All jobs are being suspended.
Warming Up...	The printer is warming up.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands, see UNIX Supplement.

❒ Check the error contents that may be printed in the configuration page.

Reference

For details about printing a configuration page, see p.126 “List/Test Print Menu”.

Printer configuration

You can check the printer configuration using telnet.

This section explains the checking procedure for input/output tray and printer language.

- UNIX: Use the "info" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp" and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "info" command.

❖ Input Tray

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the paper tray
Name	Name of the paper tray
PaperSize	Size of paper loaded in the paper tray
status	Current status of the paper tray • Normal: Normal • NoInputTray: No tray • PaperEnd: No paper

❖ Output Tray

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the output tray
Name	Name of the output tray
status	Current status of the output tray • Normal: Normal • PaperExist: Paper exist • OverFlow: Paper is full • Error: Other errors

❖ Printer Language

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the printer language used by the printer
Name	Name of the printer language used in the printer
Version	Version of the printer language

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Reference

For details about mshell "info" commands, see p.217 "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Understanding the Displayed Information

This section explains how to read status information returned by the network interface board.

Print Job Information

Use the following command to display print job information:

- UNIX: Use the "info" command and "rsh", "rcp", and "ftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "info" command.

Item	Description
Rank	Print job status. • Active Printing or preparing for printing. • Waiting Waiting to be transferred to the printer.
Owner	Print request user name.
Job	Print request number.
Files	The name of the document.
Total Size	The size of the data (spooled). The default is 0 bytes.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Reference

For details about mshell "info" commands, see p.217 "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Print Log Information

This is a record of the most recent 16 jobs printed.

Use the following command to display print log information:

- UNIX: Use the “prnlog” command and “rsh”, “rcp”, and “ftp” parameters.
- telnet : Use the “prnlog” command.

Item	Description
ID	Print request ID.
User	Print request user name.
Page	Number of pages printed
Result	Print Request Result Communication Result • OK Print was completed normally. However, the print result may not be as required due to printer problems. • NG Printing was not completed normally. • Canceled An “rcp”, “rsh”, or “lpr” command print request was canceled, possibly due to the printing application. Not applicable to the “ftp” or “rprinter” command.
Time	Time the print requested was received. Time of print request reception

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Reference

For details about mshell prnlog commands, see p.217 “Remote Maintenance by telnet”.

Configuring the Network Interface Board

Use the following command to display network interface board settings:

- telnet : Use the “show” command.

Item	Description
Common	
Mode	
Protocol Up/Dow	Protocol Settings
AppleTalk	
IPv4	
IPv6	
NetWare	
SMB	
SCSI print	
Device Up/Down	Device Settings
USB	
Ethernet interface	
Syslog priority	
NVRAM version	
Device name	
Comment	
Location	
Contact	
Soft switch	
AppleTalk	AppleTalk Settings
Mode	
Net	
Object	
Type	
Zone	

Item	Description
TCP/IP	
Mode (IPv4)	
Mode (IPv6)	
ftp	
lpr	
rsh	
telnet	
diprint	
web	
http	
ftpc	
snmp	
ipp	
autonet	
Bonjour	
ssl	
nrs	
rfu	
nbt	
ssdp	
ssh	
sftp	
IPv4	TCP/IP Settings
DHCP	
Address	
Netmask	
Broadcast	
Gateway	
IPv6	
Stateless Address	
Manual	
Gateway	
EncapType	
Host name	
DNS Domain	

Item	Description
Access Control	Access Control Settings
IPv4	
Access Entry **[X]**	X can be set between 1 and 5.
IPv6	
Access Entry **[X]**	X can be set between 1 and 5.
Time server	Time Settings
Time Zone	
Time server polling time	
SYSLOG server	Websys Settings
Home page URL1	
Home page link name1	URL of home page
Home page URL2	
Home page link name2	
Help page URL	
NetWare	
EncapType	
RPRINTER number	
Print server name	
File server name	
Context name	
Switch	
Mode	
NDS/Bindery	
Packet negotiation	
Login Mode	
Print job timeout	
Protocol	
SAP interval time	
NDS Tree Name	NDS tree name
Transfer Protocol	

Item	Description
SMB	SMB Settings
Switch	
Mode	
Direct print	
Notification	
Workgroup name	
Computer name	
Comment	
Share name **[1]**	
Protocol	
IEEE 802.11b	IEEE 802.11b Settings
Host name	
Communication Mode	
SSID	
Channel range	
Channel	
TX Rate	
Security	
WEP Authentication	
WEP Encryption key number	
WEP Encryption keys **[X]**	X can be set between 1 and 5.
WPA Encryption	
WPA Authentication	
Pre-Shared Key	
User name	
Domain name	
EAP Type	
Password	
Phase 2 user name	
Phase 2 Method TTLS	
Phase 2 Method PEAP	
Server cert	
Intermediate CA	
Server ID	

Item	Description
DNS IPv4 Server **[X]** Select IPv4 DNS Server IPv6 Server **[X]**	DNS Settings X can be set between 1 and 3. X can be set between 1 and 3.
Domain Name ether wlan	
DDNS ether wlan	
WINS ether Primary WINS Secondary WINS Wlan Primary WINS Secondary WINS	WINS Settings
SSDP UUID Profile TTL	SSDP Settings
UPnP URL	UPnP Settings

Item	Description
Bonjour Computer Name (cname) Local Hostname (ether) Local Hostname (wlan) Location Priority (diprint) Priority (lpr) Priority (ipp) IP TTL LinkLocal Route for Multi I/F: IPP Port	Bonjour Settings
SNMP SMNPv1v2 SMNPv3 protocol v1Trap v2Trap v3Trap SNMPv1v2 Remote Setting SNMPv3 Privacy	SNMP Settings
ssh Compression Port Timeout LoginTimeOut	ssh Settings

Item	Description
AuthFree	Authfree Settings
IPv4	
AuthFree Entry **[X]**	X can be set between 1 and 5.
IPv6	
AuthFree Entry **[X]**	X can be set between 1 and 5.
USB	
LPR	
Iprm check host	
lpr prnerrchk	
Certificate	
Verification	
Shell mode	Remote maintenance tool mode

Message List

This is a list of messages that appear in the printer's system log. The system log can be viewed using the "syslog" command.

System Log Information

Use the following command to display the system log information:

- UNIX: Use the "syslog" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- telnet : Use the "syslog" command.

Message	Problem and solutions
Access to NetWare server <file server name> denied. Either there is no account for this print server on the NetWare server or the password was incorrect.	(In the print server mode) Login to the file server failed. Make sure that the print server is registered on the file server. If a password is specified for the print server, delete it.
account is unavailable: Same account name be used.	User account is disabled. This could be because it use the same account name as the administrator account.
account is unavailable: The authentication password is not set up.	User account is disabled. This could be because the authentication password is not set, and only the encryption account is set.
account is unavailable: encryption is impossible.	Encryption is not possible and account is disabled. This could be because: • Security option is not installed. • Encryption password has not been specified.
add_sess_IPv4: bad trap <IPv4 address>, community: <community name>	The IPv4 address (0.0.0.0.) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPv4 address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPv6: bad trap <IPv6 address>, community: <community name>	The IPv6 address **[::]** is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPv6 address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPv4: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_IPv6: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_IPX: bad trap <IPX address> community <community name>	The IPX address (00:00:00:00:00:00) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPX address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPX: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.

Message	Problem and solutions
Attach FileServer= <file server name>	Connection to the file server as the nearest server has been established.
Attach to print queue <print queue name>	(In the print server mode) Attached to the print queue.
Authentication mode mismatch < SSID >	Authentication mode is different to the AP. The required SSID is the SSID of the access point connected to when in infrastructure mode.
Cannot create service connection	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the file server has not been established. The number of file server users may have exceeded the maximum capacity of the file server.
Cannot find rprinter (<print server name>/<printer number>)	The printer with the number displayed on the print server does not exist. Make sure that the printer number is registered on the print server.
Change IP address from DHCP Server.	The IP address changes when DHCP lease is renewed. To always assign the same IP address, set a static IP address to the DHCP server.
child process exec error! (process name)	The network service failed to start. Turn the printer off and then on. If this does not work, contact your service or sales representative.
Client password rejected	The client's password was rejected. Check the client password.
Client tls certificate rejected	The client's TLS certificate was rejected. Check the certificate.
Connected DHCP Server(<DHCP serveraddress>).	The IP address was successfully received from the DHCP server.
Could not attach to FileServer <error number>	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the file server has not been established. The file server has refused the connection. Check the file server configuration.
Could not attach to PServer <print server>	(In the remote printermode) Connection to the print server has not been established. The print server has refused the connection. Check the print server configuration.
Current Interface Speed: xxxMbps	Speed of the network (10Mbps, 100 Mbps, or 1Gbps).
Current IP address <current IP address>	Current IPv4 address.
Current IPX address <IPX address>	Current IPX address
DHCP lease time expired.	DHCP lease time has expired. The printer tries to discover the DHCP server again. The IP address until now becomes invalid.

Message	Problem and solutions
DHCP server not found.	The DHCP server was not found. Make sure that the DHCP is on the network.
dhcpcd start	The DHCPCD service (dhcp client service) has started.
Duplicate IP= <IP address>(from <MAC address>).	The same IP address (IPv4, or IPv6 address) was used. Each IP address (IPv4, or IPv6 address) must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in **[MAC address]**.
Established SPX Connection with PServer, (RPSocket= <socketnumber>, connID= <connection ID>)	(In the remote printer mode) Connection to the print server has been established.
exiting	The lpd service has ended and the system is exiting the process.
Exit pserver	(In the print server mode) The print server function is disabled because the necessary print server settings have not been made.
Frametype = <frame typename>	The frame type name is configured to be used on NetWare.
httpd start.	The httpd service has started.
IEEE 802.11b <communication mode> mode	Displays IEEE 802.11b communication mode.
inetd start.	The inetd service has started.
Interface (interface name): Duplicate IP Address (IP address).	The same IP (IPv4 or IPv6) address was used. Each IP address must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in **[IP address]**.
<Interface> started with IP: <IP address>	IP address (IPv4, or IPv4 address) has been set for the interface and is operating.
<Interface>: Subnet overlap.	The same IP address (IPv4, or IPv6 address) and the subnet mask is used with other device.
IPP cancel-job: permission denied.	The printer could not authenticate the name of the user attempting to cancel a job.
IPP job canceled. jobid=%d.	The spooled job was canceled due to error or user request.
LeaseTime= <lease time>(sec), RenewTime= <renewtime>(sec).	The resource lease time received from the DHCP server is displayed in **[lease time]** in seconds. The renewal time is displayed in **[renew time]** in seconds.
Login to fileserver <file server name> (<IPX | IPv4 | IPv6>, <NDS | BINDERY>)	(In the print server mode) Login to the file server is in the NDS or BINDERY mode.
Memory allocate error.	Data cannot be obtained. Disconnect the USB cable, and then connect it.
Name registration success. WINS Server= <WINS server address> NetBIOS Name= <NetBIOS name>	Name registration of <NetBIOS Name> to <WINS server address> was successful.

Message	Problem and solutions
Name registration success in Broadcast name= <NetBIOS Name>	Name registration by Broadcast name of <NetBIOS Name> was successful.
Name registration failed. name= <NetBIOS name>	Name registration of <NetBIOSName> failed. Change to different NetBIOS name.
nbtd start.	The nbtd service has started.
nprinter start (Netware)	(In the remote printer mode) The NetWare service has started.
nwstart start. (NetWare)	The service for NetWare protocol stack setting has started.
Open log file <file name>	(In the print server mode) The specified log file has been opened.
phy release file open failed.	Replacing the network interface board is required. Contact your sales or service representative.
Print queue <print queue name> cannot be serviced by printer 0, <print server name>	(In the print server mode) The print queue cannot be established. Make sure that print queue exists on the specified file server.
Print server <print server name> has no printer.	(In the print server mode) The printer is not assigned to the print server. Using NWadmin, assign the printer, and then restart it.
print session full	No more print jobs can be accepted.
Printer <printer name> has no queue	(In the print server mode) The print queue is not assigned to the printer. Using NWadmin, assign the print queue to the printer, and then restart it.
pserver start. (NetWare)	(In the print server mode) The NetWare service has started.
Required file server (<file servername>) not found	The required file server is not found.
received EAP Failure	EAP reception failed.
restarted.	The lpd service has started.
sap enable, saptype= <SAP type>, sapname= <SAP name>	The SAP function has started. The SAP packet is issued to advertise the service on the SAP table on the NetWare server.
server identity invalid	The server ID is disabled. Check the server authentication.
session IPv4 <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.

Message	Problem and solutions
session IPv6 <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
session <community name> already defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
session_ipx <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
Set context to <NDS contextname>	An NDS context name has been set.
smbd start. (NETBIOS)	The smbd service has started.
SMTPC: failed to get smtp server ip-address.	The SMTP server IP address could not be obtained. This could be because: • The specified DNS server could not be found. • No connection to the network has been established. • The specified DNS server could not be found. • An incorrect DNS server is specified. • The specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server. timeout.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to timeout. This could be because the specified SMTP server name is incorrect, or no connection to the network has been established, or the network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server. Check the SMTP server name, or the network connection and configuration.
SMTPC: refused connect by smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server is denied. This could be because server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the SMTP server name, port number, or the SMTP server port number.
SMTPC: no smtp server. connection close.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to no response from SMTP. This could be because a server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the SMTP server name, port number, or the SMTP server port number.

Message	Problem and solutions
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server failed. This could be because no connection to the network has been established, or the network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server, or the specified SMTP server name is incorrect, or the specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server, or a server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the DNS Server's IP address and SMTP server's IP address, or the SMTP server name and SMTP port number, or the SMTP server's SMTP port number, or the network connection and configuration.
SMTPC: username or password wasn't correct. **[response code]** (information)	Connection to the SMTP server failed, because the specified SMTP user name is incorrect, or the specified SMTP password is incorrect. Check the SMTP user name and password.
Snmp over IPv4 is ready	Communication over IPv4 with snmp is available.
Snmp over IPv6 is ready.	Communication over IPv6 with snmp is available.
Snmp over IPX is ready.	Communication over IPX with snmp is available.
snmpd start.	The snmpd service has started.
started.	The direct print service has started.
Started.	The bonjour function is enabled.
Terminated.	The bonjour function is disabled.
The print server received error <error number> during attempt to log in to the network. Access to the network was denied. Verify that the print server name and password are correct.	Login to the file server failed. The print server is not registered or a password is specified. Register the print server without specifying a password.
trap account is unavailable.	v3Trap cannot be sent. This could be because the Trap destination account is different from the account specified by the printer.
usbd is disable.	Plug and Play function and printing is disabled because usbd is disabled in the security mode. Enable usbd in the security mode.
WINS name registration: No response to server <WINS server address>	There was no response from the WINS server. Check the correct WINS server address is entered. Alternatively, check the WINS server is functioning properly.

Message	Problem and solutions
WINS wrong scopeID= <Scope ID>	An invalid scope ID was used. Use a valid scope ID.
wpa authentication Failed	WPA authentication failed. Check the WPA configuration.
wpa authentication started	WPA authentication has started.
wpa IEEE802.1X started	WPA authentication has started.
wpa connecting to authenticator	WPA is connecting to authenticator.
wpa link up	WPA key exchange has finished, and communication has been terminated.
wpa probe response doesn't have IE.	WPA probe response does not have IE.
wpa success authenticated	WPA authentication was successful.
wpa success key received	WPA key reception was successful.
wpa waiting for key	Waiting for WPA key.
wpasupd start	wpasupd has started.
wpasupd stop	wpasupd has ended.

Note

❒ For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Reference

For details about "syslog" command, see p.217 "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Preparing Printer Server

This section explains how to configure the printer as a Windows network printer. The printer is configured to enabling network clients to use it. When the network printer is connected via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you can set the printing notification function to notify clients of the results of their print jobs.

Important

❒ Under Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, to change printer properties in the **[Printer]** folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows NT 4.0, Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator or member of the PowerUsers group.

1 Open the [Printers] window from the [Start] menu.

The **[Printers]** window appears.

Under Windows XP or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, **[Printers and Faxes]** window appears.

2 Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties]. The printer properties appear.

3 On the [Sharing] tab, click [Shared as:].

4 To share the printer with users using a different version of Windows, click [Additional Drivers...].

If you have installed an alternative driver by selecting **[Shared as:]** during the printer driver installation, this step can be ignored.

5 Click [OK], and then close the printer properties.

Printing notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Follow the procedure below to configure the printer to use the printing notification function of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

Setting the print server

Important

❒ Under Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, to change printer properties in the **[Printer]** folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows NT 4.0, Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator or member of the PowerUsers group.

1 **On the [Start] menu, point to [Programs], [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Print Server Setting].**

The print server setting dialog box appears.

2 **Select the [Notify client PCs of printout/data-transmission] check box, and then click [OK].**

After print server setting is made, a dialog box appears. Confirm the dialog box content, and click **[OK]**.

Click **[Cancel]** to interrupt the procedure.

A dialog box appears for client setting.

3 **A dialog box for specifying clients appears. Click [OK].**

The print server setting is complete. Clients must be specified in order to receive notification.

Note

❒ Current printing jobs restart from the beginning after the spooler pauses briefly.

❒ When the expansion function is not used, the function is automatically set as available.

❒ If you log on using an account that does not have Administrator privileges, the client may not be notified.

Setting a Client

1. **On the [Start] menu, point to [Program], [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Extended Features Settings].**

   A dialog box for setting the expansion function appears.

2. **Select the [Notify of printout/data-transmission when using print server] check box.**

3. **Select the [Notify when using the print server] check box.**

4. **Click [OK].**

   The dialog box for setting the expansion function closes.

   The client setting is completed.

Note

❒ Set the printing notification function on the printer driver as well as on SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

Using NetWare

This section describes the setting procedure for network printers in the NetWare environment. In the NetWare environment, you can connect the printer as a "print server" or "remote printer".

Important

❒ IPv6 cannot be used on this function.

❖ **Setting procedure**

- When using the printer as a print server
  ① Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
  ② Setting the network interface board.
  ③ Turning the printer off and then back on.
- When using the printer as a remote printer
  ① Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
  ② Setting the network interface board.
  ③ Setting NetWare.
  ④ Starting the print server.

Note

❒ This procedure assumes an environment is already prepared for normal NetWare running the printing service setting.

❒ The procedure is explained with the following example settings:

- File server's name …CAREE
- Print server's name …PSERV
- Printer's name …R-PRN
- Queue name …R-QUEUE

❖ Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

To use the printer in a NetWare environment, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin to set the NetWare printing environment.

Note

❒ The NetWare Client provided by Novell is required to set the printing environment using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin under the following environments:

- NDS mode in Windows 95/98/Me
- NDS or Bindery mode in Windows 2000/XP, Windows NT 4.0

Reference

p.193 “Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin”.

❖ Printers listed by SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin lists printers connected to the network. If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, print configuration page, and then check the printer name.

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server using NetWare 3.x.

1. **Start Web Image Monitor.**

2. **Click [Login].**

   A dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

3. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

4. **In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [NetWare] in "Network".**

   - Print Server Name: Enter the NetWare print server name. To use the interface board as a print server, enter the name of a print server that is not active on the file server. Use up to 47 characters.
   - Logon Mode: Specify whether to designate a file server or NDS tree when logging on to NetWare.
   - File Server Name: When a file server name is entered here, only the specified file server is searched for. This item is mandatory. Use up to 47 characters.
   - NDS Tree: To enable NDS mode, enter the name of the NDS tree you want to log on to. Use up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
   - NDS Context Name: To enable NDS mode, enter the print server context. Use up to 127 characters.
   - Operation Mode: Specify whether to use the interface board as a print server or a remote printer.
   - Remote Printer No.: This item is effective when the interface board is specified as a remote printer. Enter the same number as the number of the printer to be created on the print server (0 to 254 characters).
   - Job Timeout: When the interface board is used as a NetWare remote printer, the printer cannot detect when a print job ends. Therefore, the printer terminates printing when a certain period of time has elapsed since it last received print data (i.e., when it has not received print data for a certain period of time). Specify here this period of time (3 to 255 seconds). The initial value is 15 (seconds).
   - Frame Type: Select the frame type from the drop-down menu.
   - Print Server Protocol: Select the protocol for NetWare from the drop-down menu.
   - NCP Delivery Protocol: Select the protocol for NCP delivery.

5 **Confirm the settings, and then click [OK].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6 **Click [Logout].**

Note

❒ To check that the configuration is made correctly, enter the following from the command prompt.

```
F:> USERLIST
```

❒ If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.

❒ If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name with the configuration page printed from the printer.

❒ If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the **[Network]** dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.

Reference

For details about printing a configuration page, see p.126 “List/Test Print Menu”.

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5)

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server using NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6.0.

Important

❒ When using the printer as a print server in NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6.0, set it to the NDS mode.

❒ When using NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6.0, set the printer as a print server.

1 Start Web Image Monitor.

2 Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

3 Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

4 In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [NetWare] in "Network".

- Print Server Name: Enter the NetWare print server name. To use the interface board as a print server, enter the name of a print server that is not active on the file server. Use up to 47 characters.
- Logon Mode: Specify whether to designate a file server or NDS tree when logging on to NetWare.
- File Server Name: When a file server name is entered here, only the specified file server is searched for. This item is mandatory. Use up to 47 characters.
- NDS Tree: To enable NDS mode, enter the name of the NDS tree you want to log on to. Use up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
- NDS Context Name: To enable NDS mode, enter the print server context. Use up to 127 characters.
- Operation Mode: Specify whether to use the interface board as a print server or a remote printer.
- Remote Printer No.: This item is effective when the interface board is specified as a remote printer. Enter the same number as the number of the printer to be created on the print server (0 to 254 characters).
- Job Timeout: When the interface board is used as a NetWare remote printer, the printer cannot detect when a print job ends. Therefore, the printer terminates printing when a certain period of time has elapsed since it last received print data (i.e., when it has not received print data for a certain period of time). Specify here this period of time (3 to 255 seconds). The initial value is 15 (seconds).

- Frame Type: Select the frame type from the drop-down menu.
- Print Server Protocol: Select the protocol for NetWare from the drop-down menu.
- NCP Delivery Protocol: Select the protocol for NCP delivery.

5 **Confirm the settings, and then click [OK].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6 **Click [Logout].**

Note

❒ To check that the configuration is made correctly, enter the following from the command prompt.

```
F:> NLIST USER/A/B
```

❒ If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.

❒ If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name with the configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.126 “List/Test Print Menu” .

❒ If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the **[Network]** dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.

Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1.

Important

- ❒ When creating a queued print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6.0, create a print queue on the file server using NetWare Administrator.
- ❒ This printer is not available as a remote printer for use in a pure IP environment.
- ❒ To use the printer in a pure IP environment, set it to TCP/IP.

Setting up using NWadmin

1. **From Windows, start NWadmin.**

   For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.

2. **Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

3. **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].**

4. **In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.**

5. **In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].**

6. **In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].**

7. **Check the settings, and then click [Create].**

8. **Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

9. **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].**

10. **In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name.**

11. **Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].**

12. **Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.**

13. **In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you, and then click [OK].**

14. **Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].**

15. **Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK].**

16 **Check the settings, and then click [OK].**

17 **Select a context specified using NIB Setup Tool, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

18 **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Sever (Non NDPS)].**

19 **In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the print server name.**

Use the same print server name specified using NIB Setup Tool.

20 **Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].**

21 **Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.**

22 **In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].**

23 **Check the settings, and then click[OK].**

24 **Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.**

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

❖ **To exit**

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ **To start**

```
CAREE: load pserver "print_server_name"
```

Setting up using Web Image Monitor

1 **Start Web Image Monitor.**

2 **Click [Login].**

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

3 **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

For details about the login name and password, consult your administrator.

4 **Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].**

5 **Confirm the settings, and then click [OK].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6 **Click [Logout].**

Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 3.x.

Setting up using PCONSOLE

1. **Enter "PCONSOLE" from the command prompt.**

   ```
   F:> PCONSOLE
   ```

2. **Create a print queue.**

   When using the existing print queue, go to the procedure for creating a printer.

3. **From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Queue Information], and then press the【Enter】key.**

4. **Press【Insert】key, and then enter a print queue name.**

5. **Press【Esc】key to return to the [Available Options] menu.**

6. **Set up the network connection to a printer.**

7. **On the [Available Options] menu, click [Print Server Information], and then press the【Enter】key.**

8. **To create a new print server, press the【Insert】key, and then enter a print server name.**

   For a currently defined print server, select a print server in the **[Print Server]** list.

9. **From the [Print Server Information] menu, select [Print Server Configuration].**

10. **From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Printer Configuration].**

11. **Select the printer indicated as [Not Installed].**

12. **To change the printer name, enter a new name.**

    A name “Printer x” is assigned to the printer. The “x” stands for the number of the selected printer.

13. **As type, select [Remote Parallel, LPT1].**

    The IRQ, Buffer size, Starting form, and Queue service mode are automatically configured.

14. **Press the【Esc】key, and then click [Yes] on the confirmation message.**

15. **Press the【Esc】key to return to [Print Server Configuration Menu].**

16 **Assign print queues to the created printer.**

17 **From [Print Server Configuration Menu], select [Queues Serviced By Printer].**

18 **Select the printer created.**

19 **Press the【Insert】key to select a queue serviced by the printer.**
You can select several queues.

20 **Follow the instructions on the screen to make other necessary settings.**
Following these steps, check that the queues are assigned.

21 **Press the【Esc】key until "Exit?" appears, and then select [Yes] to exit PCONSOLE.**

22 **Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.**
If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

❖ **To quit**

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ **To start**

```
CAREE: load pserver "print_server_name"
```

Note

❒ If the printer works as configured, the message "Waiting for job" appears.

Setting up using Web Image Monitor

1 **Start Web Image Monitor.**

2 **Click [Login].**
A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

3 **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**
For details about the login name and password, consult your administrator.

4 **In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [NetWare] in "Network".**

5 **Confirm the settings, and then click [OK].**
Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6 **Click [Logout].**

Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1 and 6.

Important

- ❒ To use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x/5/5.1, set it to NDS mode.
- ❒ Do not use the printer as a remote printer when Pure IP is used.

Setting up using NWadmin

1. **From Windows, start NWadmin.**
   For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.
2. **Set up the network connection to a print queue. Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**
3. **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].**
4. **In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.**
5. **In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].**
6. **In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].**
7. **Check the settings, and then click [Create].**
8. **Set up the network connection to a printer. Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**
9. **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].**
10. **In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name.**
11. **Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].**
12. **Assign print queues to the created printer. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.**
13. **In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].**

14 **Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].**

15 **Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].**

16 **Set up the network connection to a print server. Select a context specified using NIB Setup Tool, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.**

17 **In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Sever (Non NDPS)].**

18 **In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the print server name.**

Use the same print server name specified using NIB Setup Tool.

19 **Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].**

20 **Assign the printer to the created print server. Click [Assignments], and then click Add in the [Assignments] area.**

21 **In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].**

22 **In the [Printers] area, click the printer you assigned, and then click [Printer] [Number].**

23 **Enter the printer number, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].**

24 **Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.**

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

❖ **To exit**

```
CAREE: unload pserver
```

❖ **To start**

```
CAREE: load pserver "print_server_name"
```

25 **Enter the printer server name as the context name, and then press the【OK】key.**

26 **Select the printer name on the context menu, and then press the【OK】key.**

Setting up using Web Image Monitor

1. **Start Web Image Monitor.**
2. **Click [Login].**
   A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.
3. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**
   For details about the login name and password, consult your administrator.
4. **Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].**
5. **Confirm the settings, and then click [OK].**
   Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.
6. **Click [Logout].**

8. Special Operations under Windows

Printing Files Directly from Windows

You can print files directly using Windows commands. For example, you can print PostScript files for PostScript 3.

❖ **Windows 95/98/Me**
You can print files directly using “ftp” command.

❖ **Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, Windows NT 4.0**
You can print files directly using “lpr”, “rcp”, or “ftp” command.

Note

❒ To use “sftp” commands, use an sftp client software that is compatible with ssh v2.

Setup

Follow the procedure below to make network environment settings.

1 Enable TCP/IP with the control panel, and then set up the printer’s network environment about TCP/IP including IP addresses.

TCP/IP of the printer is set as default.

2 Install a TCP/IP in Windows to set up the network environment.

Consult the administrator for the local setting information.

3 To print under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, or Windows NT 4.0, install "Printing service for UNIX" as the network application. To print under Windows NT 4.0, install "Microsoft TCP/IP printing" as the network application.

Reference

For details about setting up “IPv4 address”, see Hardware Guide.

For details about setting the “IPv4 address” of the printer using DHCP, see p.342 “Cautions to Take When Using in a network”.

Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address

When a host name is defined, you can specify a printer by host name instead of IPv4 address. The host names vary depending on the network environment.

When using DNS

Use the host name set to the data file on the DNS server.

When setting the "IPv4 address" of a printer using DHCP

Use the printer name on the configuration page as the host name.

Reference

For details about printing a configuration page, see p.126 "List/Test Print Menu".

In other cases

Add the IPv4 address and host name of the network printer to the hosts file on the computer used for printing. Methods of addition vary depending on operating systems.

Windows 95/98/Me

1. **Copy WINDOWSHOSTS.SAM to the same directory and name it "HOSTS" with no extension.**
2. **Open the "WINDOWSHOSTS" file created using memo pad files, for instance.**
3. **Add an IP address and host name to the hosts file using the following format:**

   ```
   192.168.15.16 host  # NP
   ```

   "192.168.15.16" is the "IPv4 Address", "host" is the printer's host name, and "#NP" is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between "192.168.15.16" and "host", between "host" and "#NP" respectively, using one line for this format.
4. **Save the file.**

Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, Windows NT 4.0

1 **Open the hosts file using memo pad files, for instance.**

The hosts file is in the following folder:

WINNTSYSTEM32DRIVERSETCHOSTS

"WINNT" is the directory of the installation destination for Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0.

2 **Add an IPv4 address and host name to the hosts file using the following format:**

```
192.168.15.16 host  # NP
```

"192.168.15.16" is the "IPv4 Address", "host" is the printer's host name, and "#NP" is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between "192.168.15.16" and "host", between "host" and "#NP" respectively, using one line for this format.

3 **Save the file.**

Note

❒ When using a host name under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.

Printing Commands

The following explains printing operations using the "lpr", "rcp", and "ftp" commands.

Enter commands using the command prompt window. The location of the command prompts varies depending on operating systems:

- Windows 95/98
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[MS-DOS Prompt]**
- Windows Me
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[Accessories]** - **[MS]** - **[DOS Prompt]**
- Windows 2000
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[Accessories]** - **[Command Prompt]**
- Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2
  [Start] - **[All Programs]** - **[Accessories]** - **[Command Prompt]**
- Windows NT 4.0
  [Start] - **[Programs]** - **[Command Prompt]**

Note

❒ Match the data format of the file to be printed with the emulation mode of the printer.

❒ If the message "print requests full" appears, no print jobs can be accepted. Try again when sessions end. For each command, the amount of possible sessions is indicated as follows:

- lpr: 10
- rcp, rsh: 5
- ftp: 3

❒ Enter the file name in a format including the path from the directory executing commands.

❒ The "option" specified in a command is an intrinsic printer option and its syntax is similar to printing from UNIX. For details, see UNIX Supplement.

lpr

❖ **When specifying a printer by IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's IP address [-Poption] [-ol] \pass name\file name
```

❖ **When using a host name instead of an IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's host name [-Poption] [-ol] \pass name\file name
```

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> lpr -Shost -Pfiletype=RPS -ol C:\PRINT\file1
```

rcp

First, register the printer's host name in the hosts file.

```
c:> rcp [-b] \pass name\file name [pass name\file name...] printer's host name:[option]
```

Note

❒ In file names, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards.

❒ When printing a binary file, add the "-b" option.

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" or "file 2" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> rcp -b C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2 host:filetype=RPS
```

ftp

Use the "put" or "mput" command according to the number of files to be printed.

❖ **When one file is printed**

```
ftp> put \pass name\file name [option]
```

❖ **When multiple files are printed**

```
ftp> mput \pass name\file name [\pass name\file name...] [option]
```

1 **Formulate the printer's IP address or the host name of the hosts file printer as an argument and use the "ftp" command.**

```
% ftp printer's IP address
```

2 **Enter the user name and password, and then press the【OK】key.**

For details about the user name and password, consult your administrator.

```
User:
Password:
```

3 **When printing a binary file, set the file mode to binary.**

```
ftp> bin
```

When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

4 **Specify files to be printed.**

The following shows the examples of printing a PostScript file named "file 1" in the "C:\PRINT" directory and printing file 1 and file 2.

```
ftp> put C:\PRINT\file1 filetype=RPS
ftp> mput C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2
```

5 **Quit ftp.**

```
ftp> bye
```

Note

- ❒ "=", ",", "_", and ";"cannot be used for filenames. File names will be read as option strings.
- ❒ For "mput" command, option can not be defined.
- ❒ For "mput" command, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards in file names.
- ❒ When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

9. Mac OS Configuration

Mac OS

This section explains how to configure a Mac OS to use EtherTalk and USB.

The following explains how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are not using Mac OS 9.1, see the manual of the Mac OS you are using for details.

Important

❒ For Mac OS 8.6 and higher. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)

Note

❒ The PostScript 3 printer driver is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

Mac OS 8 and 9:PS Driver:(language):Disk1

Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver and PPD File

It is necessary to install a printer driver and PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files to print from a Mac OS.

Follow the procedure below to install a printer driver and a PPD file into a Mac OS using Mac OS 8.6 and higher.

PostScript 3 Printer Driver

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

2 Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.

3 Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.

4 Double-click the [PS Driver] folder.

5 Double-click the folder of the language you use.

6 Open [Disk1], and then double-click the installer icon.

7 Follow the instructions on the screen.

PPD Files

1. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**
2. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
3. **Double-click the [Printer Descriptions] folder.**
4. **Double-click the folder of the language you use.**
5. **Open the [Disk1] folder.**
6. **Drag the PPD file and the plugin file into [Printer Descriptions] in [Extensions] under [System Folder].**
7. **Restart the Mac OS.**

Setting Up PPD Files

Important

❒ Make sure that the printers are connected to an AppleTalk network before performing the following procedure.

1. **On the [Apple] menu, click [Chooser].**
2. **Click the Adobe PS icon.**
3. **In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, click the name of the printer you want to use.**
4. **Click [Create].**
5. **Click the printer you want to use, and then click [Select].**
6. **A PPD file is set up and the Adobe PS icon appears at the left of the printer name in the list.**

Creating a Desktop Printer Icon

Important

❒ Make sure that printers are connected to the USB before performing the following procedure.

To use a printer connected by USB, create a desktop printer icon.

1. **Double-click [Desktop Printer Utility] in the [AdobePS Components] folder.**
2. **Click [AdobePS] in [With], click [Printer (USB) in] Create Desktop, and then click [OK].**
3. **Click [Change] in [USB Printer Selection].**
4. **Select the model you are using in [Select a USB Printer:], and then click [OK].**
5. **Click [Create].**
6. **Enter the printer name, and then click [Save].**
7. **Quit Desktop Printer Utility.**

Setting Up Options

1. **On the [Apple] menu, click [Chooser].**
2. **Click the Adobe PS icon.**
3. **In the [Select the PostScript Printer:] list, click the name of the printer you want to use, and then click [Setup...].**
4. **Click [Configure].**

   A list of options appears.
5. **Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it.**
6. **Click [OK].**

   The list of options closes.
7. **Click [OK].**

   The **[Chooser]** dialog box appears.
8. **Close the [Chooser] dialog box.**

Note

❒ If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.

Installing Adobe Type Manager

Important

❒ Quit all applications currently running before installation. Install ATM after you restart the computer.

1. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
2. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive con.**
3. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
4. **Double-click the [ATM folder].**
5. **Double-click the ATM 4.6.2 installer icon.**
6. **Follow the instructions on the screen.**
7. **When the procedure is complete, restart the computer. ATM will be completely installed only after restarting.**
8. **On the [Apple] menu, open [Control Panel], and then click [~ATM].**

   The ATM control panel opens.

   Note

   ❒ For details about installation, see the operating instructions in the ATM folder.

Installing Screen fonts

Follow the procedure below to install screen fonts.

The screen fonts described below can be found in the **[Fonts]** folder on the CD-ROM.

1. **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

   The CD-ROM drive icon appears.
2. **Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.**

   The contents of the CD-ROM appear.
3. **Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.**
4. **Double-click the [Fonts] folder.**
5. **Double-click the [ScreenFonts] folder.**

6 **Double-click the [TrueType] or Type1 folder.**

Select the font type you want to use.

7 **Copy the fonts you want to install in Fonts under [System Folder].**

8 **A confirmation message appears.**

9 **Click [OK].**

The fonts are installed.

10 **Restart the Mac OS.**

Changing to EtherTalk

1 **Open [Control Panel], and then double-click the [AppleTalk] icon.**

2 **On the [Connect via:] pop-up menu, click [Ethernet].**

3 **If you change zones, select a name on the [OK] pop-up menu.**

4 **Close the AppleTalk control panel.**

5 **Restart the Mac OS.**

Note

❒ The procedures used to configure Mac OS may vary depending on the Mac OS version. The following describes how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are using a different version of Mac OS, use the following procedures as a reference and see the manuals for your Mac OS version.

❒ Confirm the Connection to the Printer with TCP/IP.

❒ For information about installing applications required for EtherTalk, see the Mac OS manuals.

Mac OS X

This section explains how to configure a Mac OS X to use EtherTalk and USB.

Follow the procedure below to configure Mac OS X 10.1. If you are not using Mac OS X 10.1, see the manual of the Mac OS X you are using for details.

Important

❒ For Mac OS X 10.1 or higher.

❒ USB2.0 can be used only with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.

Note

❒ The PPD files are stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

Mac OS X:PPD Installer

Installing the PPD Files

Follow the procedure below to install a PPD file to print from Mac OS X.

Important

❒ You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your administrator.

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

2 Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.

3 Double-click the [Mac OS X] folder.

4 Double-click the [MacOSX PPD Installer] folder.

5 Double-click the installer icon.

6 Follow the instructions on the screen.

Setting Up the PPD File

1 Start Printer Setup Utility.

2 Click [Add].

❖ **Mac OS X 10.4 or later**
Click **[More Printers...]**. Then select the zone from the second pop-up menu.

❖ **Other Mac OS X**
Click **[AppleTalk]** on the first pop-up menu.
If the zone is set, select the zone from the second pop-up menu.

3 **Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu.**

Under Mac OS X 10.4 or later, select the printer you are using from the **[Print Using]** popup menu.

A list of printer types appears.

4 **Select the PPD file for the model you are using, and then click [Add].**

5 **Quit Printer Setup Utility.**

Setting Up Options

1 **Start System Preferences.**

2 **Click [Print & Fax].**

3 **In the [Printer] list, click the name of the printer you want to use, and then click [Printer Setup...].**

4 **Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it.**

5 **Click [Apply Changes].**

Note

❒ If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.

Using USB Interface

Follow the procedure below to setup USB connection.

Important

❒ USB2.0 can be used only with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.

1 **Start Printer Setup Utility.**

2 **Click [Add].**

❖ **Mac OS X 10.4 or later**
Click a printer that has "USB" indicated in the "Connection" column.

❖ **Other Mac OS X**
Click **[USB]** on the pop-up menu.
The connected printer appears.

3 **Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu.**

Under Mac OS X 10.4 or later, you are using from the **[Print Using]** pop-up menu.

A list of printer types appears.

4 **Select the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].**

5 **Quit Printer Setup Utility.**

Note

❒ When printing with a USB connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to **[Auto]** or **[PS]** before printing.

❒ USB2.0 can be used only with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.

Using Bonjour (Rendezvous)

Follow the procedure below to print using Bonjour (Rendezvous) under Mac OS X 10.2.3 or higher. Ethernet, wireless LAN connections can also be used.

1 **Start Printer Setup Utility.**

2 **Click [Add].**

❖ **Mac OS X 10.4 or later**
Click a printer that has "Bonjour" indicated in the "Connection" column.

❖ **Other Mac OS X**
Click **[Rendezvous]** on the pop-up menu.

3 **Select the name of the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].**

Under Mac OS X 10.4 or later, Installable Options window appears. Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it, and then **[Continue]**.

4 **Quit Printer Setup Utility.**

When printing with a Rendezvous connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to **[Auto]** or **[PS]** before printing.

Changing to EtherTalk

Follow the procedure below to configure a Mac OS X to use EtherTalk.

Important

❒ You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your administrator

1. **Open [System Preference], and then click the Network icon.**
2. **Click [Built-in Ethernet] in the [Show:] list box.**
3. **Click the [AppleTalk] tab.**
4. **Select the [Make AppleTalk Active] check box.**
5. **To change AppleTalk zones, select a name from the [AppleTalk Zone:] pop-up menu.**
6. **When the settings are made, click [Apply Now].**
7. **Quit [System Preference].**

Note

❒ For information about installing applications required for EtherTalk, see the Mac OS manuals.

Configuring the Printer

Use the control panel to enable AppleTalk. (The default is active.)

Using PostScript 3

Job Type

Use this to select the type of print job.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Job Type:]** on **[Job Log]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Job Type:]** on **[Job Log]** in the print dialog box.

You can select the following items:

❖ **Normal Print**

Select this for normal printing. The print job starts immediately after the print command is given.

❖ **Sample Print**

Use this function to print only one set of a multiple print jobs.
The other sets are saved in the printer. The saved job can be printed from the printer's control panel. You can also delete the saved job.

Note

❒ The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters.

❒ Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

❖ **Locked Print**

Use this function to save documents in the printer memory with a password, and then edit and print them as you want.

Note

❒ The "User ID:" can contain to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. The "Password" must be 4-8 digits.

❒ Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

❖ **Hold Print**

Use this function to temporarily hold a file in the printer, and print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.

Note

❒ The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters.

❒ The "File Name:" can contain to 16 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

❒ Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

❖ **Stored Print**

Use this function to store a file in the printer, and then print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.

Note

❒ The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters. The "Password:" must be 4-8 digits.

❒ The "File Name:" can contain to 16 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

❒ You can assign a password to a saved document, but password assignment is not mandatory.

❒ Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

❖ **Store and Print**

Use this function to prints the file at once and also stores the file in the printer.

Note

❒ The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters. The "Password:" must be 4-8 digits.

❒ The "File Name:" can contain to 16 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

❒ You can assign a password to a saved document, but password assignment is not mandatory.

❒ Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

Using Sample Print

Important

❒ You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.

❒ The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At most, the printer can save 100 jobs or 3,000 pages for Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print.

❒ Sample Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been executed or deleted using the Web browser before you select **[Sample Print]** from the control panel.

❒ Sample Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you select **[Sample Print]** using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Sample Print files.

❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, sample print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.

❒ Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.

- When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
- When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 3,000 pages.

1 In the application, on the [File] menu, click [Print].

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 Set the number of copies to two or more.

The sample print job is sent to the printer, and one set is printed.

3 In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].

4 On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, select [Sample Print].

5 In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

6 Check the printed output to make sure the settings are correct.

If the settings are correct, perform the following steps to print the remaining sets.

If you want to delete a saved job, see p.82 “Sample Print”.

7 On the printer’s control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

8 Select [Sample Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of sample print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

9 Select the file you want to print by pressing it.

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

10 Press [Print] to change the number of sets to be printed.

11 Enter the new number of sets using the number keys.

If you do not want to change the set quantity, perform the following steps.

You can enter up to 999 sets.

Press **【Escape】** to correct any entry mistakes.

12 Press [Print].

The remaining sets are printed.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

❒ When printing finishes, the stored file is deleted.

❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the **【Job Reset】** key. The file will be deleted.

❒ If there is a print job outstanding, this is printed before the sample print job.

Deleting a Sample Print File

1 **Press [Prt.Jobs].**

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

2 **Select [Sample Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].**

A list of sample print files stored in the printer appears.

3 **Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.**

To cancel a selection, press the highlighted jobs again.

Only one file can be selected at a time.

4 **Press [Delete].**

A confirmation screen appears.

5 **Press [Delete] to delete the file.**

After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel the delete request.

Using Locked Print

Important

- ❒ You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- ❒ The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At most, the printer can save 100 jobs or 3,000 pages for Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print.
- ❒ Locked Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select **[Locked Print]** using the control panel.
- ❒ Locked Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected **[Locked Print]** using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Locked Print files.
- ❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, locked print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.
- ❒ Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
  - When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 3,000 pages.

1 In the application, click [Print] on the [File] menu.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].

3 On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, click [Locked Print].

4 In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters, and then enter a 4-8 digit password in the [Password:] box.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

5 After making the necessary settings, click [Print].

The document file is saved in the printer.

To print the document, perform the following steps.

To delete the document, see p.86 “Locked Print”.

6 On the printer’s control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

7 Select [Locked Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of locked print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

8 **Select the file you want to print by pressing it.**
A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

9 **Press [Print].**
The password screen appears.

10 **Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the 【OK】 key.**
A confirmation screen appears.
A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press the 【OK】 key to enter the password again.

11 **Press [Print].**
The locked file is printed.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.
❒ When printing finishes, the stored file is deleted.
❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the 【Job Reset】 key. The file will be deleted.

Deleting a Locked Print File

1 **Press [Prt.Jobs].**
A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

2 **Select [Locked Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].**
A list of locked print files stored in the printer appears.

3 **Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.**
To cancel a selection, press the highlighted jobs again.
Only one file can be selected at a time.

4 **Press [Delete].**
A password screen appears.

5 **Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the 【OK】 key.**
A confirmation screen appears.
A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press **[Clear]** to enter the password again.
When multiple files are selected, the printer deletes only files that correspond to the entered password. The number of files to be deleted is displayed on the confirmation screen.

6 **Press [Delete].**
After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel the delete request.

Using Hold Print

Important

- ❒ You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- ❒ The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At most, the printer can save 100 jobs or 3,000 pages for Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print.
- ❒ Hold Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select **[Hold Print]** using the control panel.
- ❒ Hold Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected **[Hold Print]** using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Hold Print files.
- ❒ If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Hold print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.
- ❒ Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
  - When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 3,000 pages.

1 In the application, click [Print] on the [File] menu.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].

3 On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, click [Hold Print].

4 In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. File Name can also be set.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

5 After making the necessary settings, click [Print].

The document file is saved in the printer.

To print the document, perform the following steps.

To delete the document, see p.90 “Hold Print”.

6 On the printer’s control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

7 **Select [Hold Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].**

A list of hold print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

8 **Select the file you want to print by pressing it.**

9 **Press [Print].**

The hold print file is printed.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

❒ To stop printing after printing has started, press the **【Job Reset】** key. The file will be deleted.

❒ When printing is completed, the stored file is deleted.

Deleting a Hold Print File

1 **Press [Prt.Jobs].**

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

2 **Select [Hold Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].**

A list of hold print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3 **Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.**

To cancel a selection, press the highlighted job again.

Only one file can be selected at a time.

4 **Press [Delete].**

A confirmation screen appears.

5 **Press [Delete].**

After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.

Note

❒ Press **[Clear]** to cancel the delete request.

Using Stored Print

Important

- ou need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- Stored Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select **[Stored Print]** using the control panel.
- Stored Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected **[Stored Print]** using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Stored Print files.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Stored print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.
- Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
  - When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 3,000 pages.

1 In the application, click [Print] on the [File] menu.

The **[Print]** dialog box appears.

2 In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].

3 On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, click [Stored Print] or [Store and Print].

- **[Stored Print]**
  Stores the file in the printer and print it later using the control panel.
- **[Store and Print]**
  Prints the file at once and also stores the file in the printer.

4 In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters, and then enter a 4-8 digit password in the [Password:] box. File Name can also be set.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

You can assign a password to a saved document, but password assignment is not mandatory.

The password must be entered when printing or deleting.

5 After making the necessary settings, click [Print].

The document file is saved in the printer.

To print the document, perform the following steps.

To delete the document, see p.93 “Stored Print”.

6 On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

7 Select [Stored Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

8 Select the file you want to print by pressing it.

9 Press [Print].

A confirmation screen appears.

If you have already set a password, proceed to the following step.

10 Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the 【OK】 key.

A confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press the 【OK】 key to enter the password again.

If you have not set the password, proceed to the following step.

11 Press [Print]

The Stored Print file is printed.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel printing.

❒ Stored Print files sent to the printer is not deleted unless you delete them in the printer, or enable automatic deletion of Stored Print files.

Deleting a Stored Print File

1. **Press [Prt.Jobs].**
   A list of print files stored in the printer appears.
2. **Select [Stored Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].**
   A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.
3. **Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.**
4. **Press [Delete].**
   A confirmation screen appears.
5. **Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press 【OK】.**
   A confirmation screen appears.
   A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press 【OK】 to enter the password again.
6. **Press [Delete].**
   After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.

Note

❒ Press **[Cancel]** to cancel the delete request.

❒ If you have already set a password in the printer driver, enter it to delete.

User Code

Use this to set a user code for print logging.

Enter a user code using up to eight digits. A user code identifies a group of users and allows you to check the number of sheets printed under each code with SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	Select the **[Enable User Code]** check box, and then enter a user code in the **[User Code]** box on **[Job Log]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	Select the **[Enable User Code]** check box, and then enter a user code in the **[User Code]** box on **[Job Log]** in the print dialog box.

Paper Size

Use this to select the size of paper you want to use.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Paper:]** on the **[Page Attributes]** tab in the Page Setup dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Paper Size:]** in the Page Setup dialog box.

Note

❒ For details about the paper sizes supported by this printer, see Hardware Guide.

Fit to Paper

When the size of the document and paper size differ, set whether or not to print according to paper size.

Mac OS	**[Fit to Paper]** on **[Printer Specific Options]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Fit to Paper]** on the **[Features x]** tab on **[Printer Features]** in the print dialog box.

❖ **Prompt User**

Print is performed with the size of document to be printed unchanged.

❖ **Nearest Size and Scale**

If the paper size is smaller than the selected paper size, the driver reduces the print size.

If the paper size is larger than the size of document to be printed, print is not to fit the paper size.

❖ **Nearest Size and Crop**
When the paper size is smaller than the size of document to be printed, print is adjusted to meet the paper size.

Input Slot

Use this to select the paper sources.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Paper Source:]** on **[General]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Paper Feed]** in the print dialog box.

Note

❒ For details about the paper sources, see Hardware Guide.

Resolution

Use this to set the resolution types.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Resolution]** on **[Printer Specific Options]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Resolution]** on the **[Features x]** tab on **[Printer Features]** in the print dialog box.

Note

❒ For more information about the resolution types, see Hardware Guide.

Orientation Override

Use this to set the paper orientation.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Orientation Override]** on **[Printer Specific Options]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Orientation Override]** on the **[Feature Sets: X]** tab on **[Printer Features]** in the print dialog box.

You can select the following items:

- Off
- Landscape
- Portrait

Toner Saving

Use this function to reduce the amount of toner used when printing.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Toner Saving]** on **[Printer Specific Options]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Toner Saving]** on the **[Features: Set x]** tab on **[Printer Features]** in the print dialog box.

Note

❒ For details about this function, see printer driver Help.

Collate

Use this function to enable collation. With this feature, the printer can efficiently print collated sets of multiple-page documents.

Important

❒ Make sure that the following check boxes have not been selected.

- Mac OS
  The **[Collate:]** check box in the print dialog box.
- Mac OS X
  The **[Collate:]** check box on **[Copies & Pages]** in the printer dialog box.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Collate:]** on **[Printer Specific Options]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Collate:]** on the **[Features: Set x]** tab on **[Printer Feature]** in the printer dialog box.

Paper Type

Use this to select the paper type.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	**[Paper Type:]** on **[Printer Specific Options]** in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	**[Paper Type]** on the **[Feature Set: x]** tab on **[Printer Features]** in the print dialog box.

Note

❒ For details about the media type supported by this printer, see Hardware Guide.

Dithering

Use this function to set the Image Rendering mode.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	Dithering: on Printer Specific Options in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	Dithering: on the Feature Set: x tab on Printer Features in the print dialog box.

You can select the following items:

❖ **Auto**
Use this setting to configure the best dithering method automatically depending on the appearance of the document to be printed.

❖ **Photographic**
Performs dithering using an appropriate pattern for photographs.

❖ **Text**
Performs dithering using an appropriate pattern for text.

❖ **User Setting**
Use this setting to print images set in half tone in your application.

Printer Utility for Mac

By using Printer Utility for Mac, you can download fonts, change the name of the printer and so on.

Important

❒ If a Macintosh and printer are connected by USB, you cannot use Printer Utility for Mac.

Note

❒ Printer Utility for Mac is included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

❒ Printer Utility for Mac requires Mac OS 7.6.1-9.x, or Mac OS X 10.1.x or 10.2.1. Mac OS X 10.0.x and 10.2 are not supported.

Installing Printer Utility for Mac

Follow these steps to install Printer Utility for Mac on the printer.

1 Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The CD-ROM icon appears.

2 Double-click the CD-ROM icon.

The contents of the CD-ROM appear.

3 Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] icon to open it.

Under Mac OS X, double-click the **[Mac OS X]** folder.

4 Double-click the [PS Utility] folder on the CD-ROM, and then drag the [Printer Utility for Mac] file, and then drop it into the Macintosh hard disk.

5 Drag the CD-ROM icon and drop it into [Trash] to eject the CD-ROM.

Printer Utility for Mac is installed.

Note

❒ Printer Utility for Mac is included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

❒ Printer Utility for Mac requires Mac OS 8.1 or higher. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)

❒ Printer Utility for Mac cannot use Mac OS X (native mode).

Starting Printer Utility for Mac

Mac OS

Important

❒ Before starting Printer Utility for Mac, make sure the printer is selected in **[Chooser]** on the Apple menu.

1. **Double-click the [Printer Utility for Mac] icon.**

   The **[Printer Utility for Mac]** dialog box appears.

2. **Click [OK].**

   Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.

Mac OS X

1. **Double-click the [Printer Utility for Mac] icon.**

   The **[Printer Utility for Mac]** dialog box appears.

2. **Click [OK].**

3. **In the [Available Printers:] box, select the printer you want to use.**

   If you change zones, select a name from **[Available Network Zones:]**.

   Click **[Choose Printer...]** on the Printer Utility for Mac menu if you want to change the printer.

4. **Select the printer you want to use.**

   Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.

5. **Click [Choose].**

Printer Utility for Mac Functions

Downloading PS Fonts

You can download the PS fonts to the printer memory or hard disk drive.

Important

- ❒ The following procedure to download the fonts assume that you are a system administrator. If you are not, be sure to consult your system administrator.
- ❒ During the download, do not turn off the power switch, operate the panel or open or close the cover.
- ❒ If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to the defaults.
- ❒ Confirm that a Macintosh and the printer are connected with Appletalk.

1 **Select [Download PS Fonts...] on the [File] menu.**

2 **Click [Add to list].**

The dialog box to select fonts appears.

3 **Select the desired font files, and then click [Open].**

The list of selectable font names appears.

4 **After adding all the fonts you want to download, click [OK].**

The dialog box of selected fonts to download appears.

5 **Click [Download].**

The fonts begin to download, and the download status is shown.

6 **When the completion message appears, click [OK].**

7 **Click [Cancel].**

Note

- ❒ Some fonts cannot be downloaded.
- ❒ Before downloading, read the documentation about the fonts you want to use.

Displaying Printer Fonts

You can display the available fonts currently downloaded to the printer. Fonts in the printer memory and hard disk drive can be displayed.

1. **Select [Display Printer's Fonts...] on the [File] menu.**
   A dialog box appears.
2. **Select [Printer's memory] or [Printer's disk].**
3. **Click [OK].**

Note

❒ The fonts displayed in italics are the default fonts.

Deleting Fonts

You can delete fonts from the printer's memory or hard disk drive.

Important

❒ You cannot delete the fonts displayed in italic.

1. **Select [Display Printer's fonts] on the [File] menu.**
   A dialog box appears.
2. **Select [Printer's memory] or [Printer's disk].**
3. **Select the fonts you want to delete.**
4. **Click [Delete].**
   A confirmation message appears.
5. **Confirm the fonts you want to delete and the printer name from which you want to delete the fonts.**
6. **Click [Continue], and then click [OK].**
7. **Click [OK].**

Initializing the Printer Disk

When initializing the printer hard disk, all the fonts downloaded to the printer hard disk drive are deleted. Before initializing, be sure to check the fonts on the hard disk drive.

Important

❒ When initializing the printer hard disk drive from the control panel, all of the data on the printer hard disk drive is deleted. Before initializing, be sure to check the data on the hard disk drive.

❒ Do not turn off the power switch until initializing is completed, otherwise the hard disk drive might be damaged.

1. **Select [Initialize Printer's Disk...] on the [File] menu.**

   The confirmation message appears. To cancel initialization, click **[Cancel]**.

2. **Click [Execute].**

   Initializing starts.

3. **When the completion message appears, click [OK].**

Page Setup

You can set the paper size on which to print "Print Fonts Catalogue" and "Prints Fonts Sample".

1. **Select [Page Setup...] on the [File] menu.**

2. **Select the paper size.**

3. **Click [OK].**

Printing Font Catalog

You can print the names of fonts available on the printer.

1. **Select [Print Fonts Catalog...] on the [File] menu.**

2. **Click [Print].**

Note

❒ The paper selected under **[Page Setup]** is used.

Printing Font Sample

You can print samples of fonts downloaded to the hard disk drive or memory.

1. **Select [Print Fonts Sample...] on the [File] menu.**
2. **Click [Print].**

Note

❒ Print by using the paper selected on **[Page Setup]**.

Renaming the Printer

You can change the printer name displayed under Appletalk. If you connect several printers on the network, assign different names so you can identify them. If several printers have the same name, a digit appears next to the printer name in **[Chooser]**.

Important

❒ You can enter up to 31 digits and letters.

❒ Do not use symbols, for example "*", ":", "=", "@", "~".

Mac OS

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Rename Printer...].**
2. **In the [New Name:] filed enter a new name.**
3. **Click [Rename].**

   The printer name is changed.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **On the Apple menu, click [Chooser].**
6. **Click the [AdobePS] icon.**
7. **Select the printer whose name you changed, and then close the [Chooser] dialog box.**

   If there are several AppleTalk zones, select the zone the printer belongs to.

Mac OS X

1. **On the [File] menu, click [Rename Printer...].**
2. **In the [New Name:] filed enter a new name.**

3 **Click [Rename].**

The printer name is changed.

4 **Click [OK].**

5 **On the [Printer Utility for Mac] menu, click [Choose Printer...].**

6 **In the [Available Network Zones:] list, select the zone for the Macintosh in use.**

7 **In the [Available Printers:] list, select the printer whose name you changed, and then click [Choose].**

Restarting the Printer

You can restart the printer.

1 **Select [Restart Printer] on the [File] menu.**

2 **Confirm the message that appears on the screen, and then click [Restart].**

The printer restarts.

The fonts downloaded in the printer memory will be deleted.

If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to the defaults.

Downloading PostScript Files

You can download a Postscript file to the printer.

1 **Select [Download PostScript File...] on the [Utility] menu.**

2 **Select the file name to download, click the file name, and then click [Open].**

3 **Type the log file name, and then click [Save].**

The selected file is downloaded.

Errors are recorded in the log file.

Selecting the Zone

You can change the zone to which the printer belongs under Appletalk.

Important

❒ Confirm that a Macintosh and printer are connected with Appletalk.

Mac OS

1. **On the [Utility] menu, click [Select Zone...].**
   The zone to which the printer belongs and the available zone list appear.
2. **Select the zone in which you want to locate the printer, and then click [Change].**
   A confirmation message appears.
3. **Click [Continue].**
   A confirmation message appears.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **On the Apple menu, click [Chooser].**
6. **Click the [AdobePS] icon.**
7. **In the [AppleTalk zone:] list, select the zone you changed.**
8. **In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, select the printer you want to use.**
9. **Close the [Chooser] dialog box.**

Mac OS X

1. **On the [Utility] menu, click [Select Zone...].**
   The zone to which the printer belongs and the available zone list appear.
2. **Select the zone which you want to locate the printer in, and then click [Change].**
   A confirmation message appears.
3. **Click [Continue].**
   A confirmation message appears.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **On the [Printer Utility for Mac] menu, click [Choose Printer...].**
6. **In the [Available Network Zones:] list, select the zone you changed.**
7. **In the [Available Printers:] list, select the model of printer in use, and then click [Choose].**

Displaying the Printer Status

You can display and confirm the current status of the printer.

1. **Select [Display Printer Status...] on the [Utility] menu.**

   The current status of the printer appears.

2. **Confirm the current status of the printer.**

   You can confirm the memory capacity, the VM (Virtual Memory) space, the hard disk drive status and available space on the hard disk drive. You can also confirm the zone to which the printer belongs.

3. **Click [OK].**

Launching the Dialogue Console

You can create and edit a PostScript file for printing, and then download it to the printer.

Important

- ❒ "Launch Dialogue Console" is recommended for users with an understanding of PostScript.
- ❒ Do not download any file other than PostScript files to the printer.
- ❒ "Launch Dialogue Console" must be used at your own responsibility.

1. **Select [Launch Dialogue Console...] on the [Utility] menu.**

   Open the editing screen. The Dialogue Console menu bar appears.

2. **Type the PostScript command in the editor screen.**

   To edit a PostScript file, select **[Open]** on the **[File]** menu to open it.

   You can search or replace a character string by using the **[Search]** menu.

3. **After editing the PostScript file, select [Download Top Window] on [Console] menu to start printing.**

   The PostScript file is sent to the printer.

   The **[Reply from Printer]** box opens, depending on the PostScript file you sent.

4. **Select [Return To Main Menu] on the [Console] menu to close the PostScript file.**

10. Security Measures Provided by this Printer

Using Authentication and Managing Users

This section explains how to improve this printer's security.

The setting can be done only by the administrator.

❖ **Enabling Authentication**

To control administrators' and users' access to the printer, perform administrator authentication and user authentication using login user names and login passwords. To perform authentication, the authentication function must be enabled.

❖ **Specifying Authentication Information to Log on**

Users are managed using the personal information managed in the printer's address book.

Enabling user authentication limits usage of printer to people registered in the address book to use the printer. Users can be managed in the address book by the user administrator.

❖ **Specifying Which Functions are Available**

This can be specified by the user administrator. Specify the functions available to registered users. By making this setting, administrators can limit the functions available to users.

Preventing Information Leaks

❖ **Guarding Against Unauthorized Copying (Unauthorized Copy Prevention)**
Using the printer driver, mask and pattern can be embedded in the printed document.

❖ **Guarding Against Unauthorized Copying (Data security for copying)**
Using the printer driver with the data security for the copying function, a document can be printed with an embedded pattern of hidden text.
To gray out the copy or stored file of a copy-guarded document when the document is copied or stored , the optional security module is required.

❖ **Printing confidential files**
Using the printer's Locked Print, files can be stored in the printer as confidential files and then print them. Those file can be printed using the printer's control panel and collected on the spot to prevent others from seeing it.

❖ **Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission**
You can specify in the address book which users are allowed to send files using the scanner or fax function.
You can also limit the direct entry of destinations to prevent files from being sent to destinations not registered in the address book.

❖ **Protecting Registered Information in the Address Book**
This function allows administrator to specify which users have permission to access the data in the address book. Usage of the data in the address book by unregistered users can be prevented.
Administrator can also encrypt the data in the address book to protect the data from unauthorized reading.

❖ **Managing Log Files**
Data security can by improved by deleting log files stored in the printer. By transferring the log files, administrator can check the history data and identify unauthorized access.
To transfer the log data, the log collection server is required.

❖ **Overwriting the Data on the Hard Disk**
Before disposing of the printer, make sure all data on the hard disk is deleted.
Prevent data leakage by automatically deleting transmitted printer jobs from memory.
To overwrite the hard disk data, the optional ipp unit is required.

Limiting and Controlling Access

❖ **Preventing Modification or Deletion of Stored Data**

Users with access permission to stored files can be specified. Permit selected users who have to access permissions to stored files to modify or delete the files.

❖ **Preventing Modification of Printer Settings**

The printer settings that can be modified depend on the type of administrator account.

Register the administrators so that users cannot change the administrator settings.

❖ **Limiting Available Functions**

This function allows administrator to specify which users have accessibility to each of the printer's functions, to prevent unauthorized operation. Limiting and Controlling Access

Enhanced Network Security

❖ **Preventing Unauthorized Access**
Limit IP addresses or disable ports to prevent unauthorized access over the network and protect the address book, stored files, and default settings.

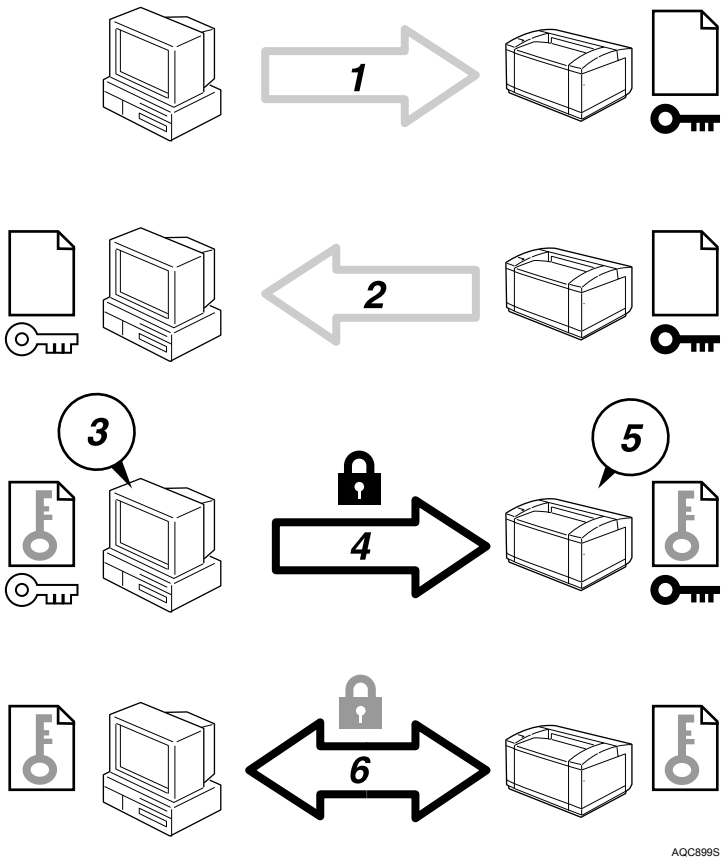
❖ **Encrypting Transmitted Passwords**
Prevent login passwords, group passwords for PDF files, and IPP authentication passwords being revealed by encrypting them for transmission.
Also, encrypt the login password for administrator authentication and user authentication.

Configuring SSL Encryption

When you access the printer using a Web Image Monitor or IPP, you can establish encrypted communication using SSL.

When you access the printer using an application such as SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can establish encrypted communication using SNMPv3 or SSL. To protect data from interception, analysis, and tampering, you can install a server certificate in the printer, negotiate a secure connection, and encrypt transmitted data.

❖ **SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)**



1. **To access the printer from a user's computer, request for the SSL server certificate and public key.**

2. **The server certificate and public key are sent from the printer to the user's computer.**

3. **Create shared key from the user's computer, and then encrypt it using public key.**

4. **The encrypted shared key is sent to the printer.**

5. **The encrypted shared key is decrypted in the machine using private key.**

6. **Transmit the encrypted data using the shared key, and then decrypt the data at the machine to attain secure transmission.**

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM

The following softwares and utilities are included in the CD-ROMs that come with the printer.

❖ **Font Manager 2000**
For installing new screen fonts, or organizing and managing fonts already in the system. For details about Font Manager 2000, see the manual on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

❖ **SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin**
For the system administrator to manage network printers.

Note
❒ SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

❖ **DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client**
For users to manage their network print status.

Note
❒ DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

Viewing the contents of the CD-ROM

1 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**
The installer starts.

2 **Click [Browse This CD-ROM].**
Explorer starts and displays the contents of the CD-ROM.

Printer Drivers for This Printer

Printing requires installing a printer driver appropriate to your operating system. The following drivers are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

❖ **RPCS printer driver**

This printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. In addition to the conventional user interface, another preset user interface is provided.
The following operating system is supported.

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

❖ **PostScript Printer Drivers and PPD files**

PostScript printer drivers and the PPD files are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer. PostScript printer drivers allow the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.
The following operating system is supported.

- Windows 95/98/Me, Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, Mac OS, and Mac OS X.

Note

❒ The PostScript printer drivers and PPD files are included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

❒ For Mac OS, version 8.6 or higher is required. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)

❖ **PPD files**

PPD files are included on the CD-ROM provided with this printer. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is an application that uses TCP/IP and IPX/SPX to monitor network printers. It can monitor multiple network printers using IP address. We recommend that administrators use this application.

❖ File path

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

NETWORKDEVMONADMINDISK1

Operating system	Protocol stack
Windows 95/98/Me	TCP/IP provided with Windows 95/98/Me IPX/SPX provided with Windows 95/98/Me NetWare Client provided with Windows 95/98 Novell Client provided with Windows 95/98
Windows 2000	TCP/IP provided with Windows 2000 IPX/SPX provided with Windows 2000 NetWare Client provided with Windows 2000 Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Window NT
Windows XP	TCP/IP provided with Windows XP IPX/SPX provided with Windows XP NetWare Client provided with Windows XP Novell Client provided with Windows XP
Windows Server 2003/2003 R2	TCP/IP provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 IPX/SPX provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 NetWare Client provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 Novell Client provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2
Windows NT 4.0	TCP/IP provided with Windows NT IPX/SPX provided with Windows NT Client Service for NetWare provided with Windows NT Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Windows NT

❖ Available functions

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin has the following functions to check:

- printer supplies such as paper or toner;
- results of print jobs executed from the computer.

Note

❒ For information about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client has the following functions. We recommend that users install this application.

- Printing in a peer-to-peer network, using TCP/IP, and IPP from Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0.
- Constantly monitoring the status of devices on the network using TCP/IP and IPX/SPX.

❖ File path

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

NETWORKDEVMONCLIENTDISK1

Operating system	Protocol stack
Windows 95/98/Me	TCP/IP provided with Windows 95/98/Me IPX/SPX provided with Windows 95/98/Me NetWare Client provided with Windows 95/98/Me Novell Client provided with Windows 95/98/Me
Windows 2000	TCP/IP provided with Windows 2000 IPX/SPX provided with Windows 2000 NetWare Client provided with Windows 2000 Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or NT
Windows XP	TCP/IP provided with Windows XP IPX/SPX provided with Windows XP NetWare Client provided with Windows XP Novell Client provided with Windows XP
Windows Server 2003/2003 R2	TCP/IP provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 IPX/SPX provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 NetWare Client provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 Novell Client provided with Windows Server 2003/2003 R2
Windows NT 4.0	TCP/IP provided with Windows NT IPX/SPX provided with Windows NT Client Service for NetWare provided with Windows NT Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Windows NT

❖ Available functions

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client has the following functions.

- Peer-to-peer print function
  - Prints directly on the network printer without sending any data to a print server.
  - Prints on a substitute printer when there are too many jobs waiting on the specified printer, or when an error disables printing (Recovery Printing).
  - Allocates multiple print jobs to multiple printers (Parallel Printing).
  - Executes prior group registration of printers specified for Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.
- Notification function
  - Displays an error message when there is an error on the specified printer while transferring or printing data.
  - Notifies a print completion. You can also be notified of the print condition, such as displaying the notice only when Recovery Printing is executed.
- Monitoring function
  - Checks printer supplies such as paper or toner.
  - Simultaneously monitors multiple printers in use.
  - Checks the printer's network settings and detailed information of printers.
  - Enables you to check the print job log using the user ID

Important

❒ To perform Recovery or Parallel printing, the same options that are installed on the original printer must be installed on the other printers also. Printers that lack a required option cannot be used for Recovery or Parallel printing.

❒ To perform Recovery or Parallel printing, the same paper loaded in the original printer must be loaded in the other printers also. Load all printers with the same paper as that loaded in the tray selected for printing.

❒ Results of Recovery or Parallel Printing might differ, depending on the model of the other printer and the options installed on it.

❒ If you select Sample Print or Locked Print, you cannot select Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.

Note

❒ For details about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

Cautions to Take When Using in a network

Connecting a Dial-up Router to a Network

When the NetWare file server and printer are on opposite sides of a router, packets are sent back and forth, causing communication charges to be incurred. Because packet transmission is a specification of NetWare, you need to change the configuration of the router. If the network you are using does not allow you to configure the router, configure the printer instead.

Configuring the router

Filter packets so that they do not pass over the dial-up router.

Note

❒ The MAC address of the printer doing the filtering is printed on the printer configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see p.126 “List/Test Print Menu”.

❒ For details about configuring the printer if the router cannot be configured, see the instructions below.

Configuring the printer with NetWare

1 Following the setup method described earlier in this manual, configure the file server.

2 Set the frame type for NetWare environment.

Reference

For details about selecting a frame type, see p.143 “Host Interface Menu”.

Configuring the printer without NetWare

When not printing, the network interface board sends packets over the network. Set NetWare to “inactive”.

Reference

For details about selecting protocols, see p.143 “Host Interface Menu”.

Using DHCP

You can use the printer in a DHCP environment. You can also register the printer NetBIOS name on a WINS server when it is running. Note the following points when an Ethernet interface is simultaneously installed.

❖ When static IPv4 addresses are set for each interface

- IPv4 address: When set at the same value, the Ethernet interface is preferred.
- Subnet mask: When a value overlaps, the Ethernet interface is preferred.
- Gateway address: The value set is used. For the gateway address, set the gateway address located in the subnetwork set by the interface. If the value is outside the subnet range set by the interface, it operates as "0.0.0.0".

❖ When obtaining addresses from the DHCP server

- IP Address, Subnet Mask: you can configure addresses assigned by a DHCP server. If IPv4 addresses overlap or the same subnet IP addresses are selected, the effective value is assigned only to the prioritized interface. Ethernet has default interface priority.
- AutoNet: A temporary IPv4 address starting with 169.254 and not used on the network, is assigned to the prioritized interface.
- Gateway Address, DNS Server Address, and Domain Name: You can configure the addresses assigned by DHCP to the prioritized interface.
  If the gateway address is beyond the range of the subnet selected for the interface, the printer operates using "0.0.0.0". Ethernet has default interface priority.
  Ethernet has default interface priority.

❖ When there are static IPv4 addresses and addresses assigned by DHCP

- IPv4 Address and subnet mask: if a static IPv4 address is the same as an address assigned by DHCP, or the static subnet mask address and the subnet mask address assigned by DHCP overlap, the printer uses the static IPv4 address interface. The interface with the DHCP setting is set by default.

- Gateway Address: operates using the address entered manually.
  If a static address is not selected, or is set to 0.0.0.0, the interface using the address assigned by DHCP is used.

Note

❒ NetBIOS name on a WINS server must be configured for the WINS server.

❒ Supported DHCP servers are: Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows NT 4.0, and the DHCP server included with NetWare and UNIX

❒ If you do not use the WINS server, reserve the printer's IP address in the DHCP server so the same IPv4 address is assigned every time.

❒ To use the WINS server, change the WINS server setting to "active" using the control panel.

❒ Using the WINS server, you can configure the host name via the remote network printer port.

❒ DHCP relay-agent is not supported. If you use DHCP relay-agent on a network via ISDN, it will result in increased line charges. This is because your computer connects to the ISDN line whenever a packet is transferred from the printer. If there is more than one DHCP server, use the same setting for all servers. The printer operates using data from the DHCP server that responds first.

Using AutoNet

If the printer IPv4 address is not assigned by a DHCP server automatically, a temporary IPv4 address starting with 169.254, which is not used on the network, can be automatically selected by the printer.

You must change this setting to "on" to use AutoNet.

Note

❒ The IP address assigned by the DHCP server is given priority over that selected by AutoNet.

❒ You can confirm the current IPv4 address on the configuration page.

❒ When AutoNet is running, the NetBIOS name is not registered on the WINS server.

❒ The printer cannot communicate with devices that do not have the AutoNet function. However, this printer can communicate with Macintosh computers running Mac OS X 10.2.3. or higher.

Reference

For more information about the configuration page, see p.126 "List/Test Print Menu".

See p.217 "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Configuring the WINS Server

The printer can be configured to register its NetBIOS name with a WINS server when the power is turned on. This enables the NetBIOS name of the printer to be specified from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin even in a DHCP environment. This section explains configuring the WINS server.

Note

- ❒ The WINS server is supported with Windows NT 4.0 Server Service Pack 4 or higher, and Windows 2000 Servers WINS Manager.
- ❒ For details about the WINS server settings, see Windows Help.
- ❒ If there is no reply from the WINS server, the NetBIOS name is registered by broadcast.
- ❒ The NetBIOS name can be entered using up to 13 alphanumeric characters.

Using Web Image Monitor

1. **Start a Web browser.**
2. **Enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.**

   Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.
3. **Click [Login].**

   The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.
4. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].**

   Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
5. **In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [Network].**
6. **Click [TCP/IP].**
7. **Check that [Enable] is selected for [WINS] in the [Ethernet+IEEE 802.11b column], and then enter the WINS server IPv4 address in [Primary WINS Server] and [Secondary WINS Server].**
8. **Click [OK].**
9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

Using telnet

See p.217 "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Using the Dynamic DNS Function

Dynamic DNS is a function which dynamically updates (registers and deletes) records (A record and PTR record) managed by the DNS server. When a DNS server is part of the network environment to which this printer, a DNS client, is connected, records can be dynamically updated using this function.

Updating

Updating procedure varies depending on whether the printer IP address is static or acquired by DHCP.

Note

❒ When the dynamic DNS function is not used, records managed by the DNS server must be updated manually, if the printer's IP address is changed.

❒ To update the record using the printer, the DNS server has to have one of the following:

- No security settings made.
- If security settings are made, an IP-specified client (this printer) permits updating.

❖ **For a static IP setting**

If the IP address or host name is changed, the A and PTR records are updated. If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

- Ethernet and IEEE 802.11b
  RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)

❖ **For DHCP settings**

As a substitute for the printer, the DHCP server updates the record, and one of the following occurs:

- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the DHCP server updates the A and PTR records.
- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the printer updates the A record, and the DHCP server updates the PTR record.

If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

- Ethernet and IEEE 802.11b
  RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)

Important

❒ Dynamic update using message authentication (TSIG, SIG(0)) is not supported.

DNS servers targeted for operation

❖ For static IP setting

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

❖ For DHCP setup, when the printer updates the A record

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

❖ For DHCP setup, when the DHCP server updates records

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher
- DNS servers with standard NetWare 5 (or a higher version) features

DHCP servers targeted for operation

As a substitute for the printer, DHCP servers capable of updating the A record and PTR record are as follows:

- Microsoft DHCP servers with standard Windows 2000 Server (Service Pack 3 or higher versions)/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 features
- ISC DHCP 3.0 or higher
- DHCP server with standard NetWare 5 features

Setting the dynamic DNS function

Make settings with telnet using the “dns” command. For details, see p.217 “Remote Maintenance by telnet” .

Installing Font Manager 2000

Important

❒ Under Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, or Windows NT 4.0, installing applications by Auto Run requires administrator permission. To install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has administrator permission.

1 **Quit all applications currently running.**

2 **Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

3 **Click [Font Manager 2000].**

4 **Follow the instructions on the screen.**

Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0

Under Windows 95/98/Me/2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, or Windows NT 4.0 with Adobe PageMaker, you need to copy PPD files to the PageMaker folder.

PPD files have the .ppd extension in the folder "DRIVERS\PS\WIN9X_ME\(Language)\DISK1\" on the CD-ROM.

The "WIN9X_ME" folder inside the "PS" folder is for Windows 95/98/Me. Use the folder at this level that is appropriate for the operating system you are currently using.

The third folder "(Language)" may be substituted by an appropriate language name.

Copy the .ppd file to the PageMaker folder.

- For PageMaker 6.0 default installation
  The directory is "C:\PM6\RSRC\PPD4".
- PageMaker 6.5 default installation
  The directory is "C:\PM65\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4".
  The "USENGLISH" may vary depending on your language selection.
- For PageMaker 7.0 default installation
  The directory is "C:\PM7\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4".
  The "USENGLISH" may vary depending on your language selection.

Note

❒ If the driver is not set correctly after copying the ".ppd" file, printing may not be performed properly.

❒ When using PageMaker, the optional features that can be selected by the printer driver will not be active. The following procedure describes how to activate the optional printer features.

① On the **[File]** menu, click **[Print]**.
The **[Print Document]** dialog box appears.

② Make the necessary settings in the **[Features]** box.

When Using Windows Terminal Service/MetaFrame

The following explains how to use Windows Terminal Service and Maintenance.

Operating Environment

The following operating systems and MetaFrame versions are supported.

❖ **Windows NT Server 4.0 Terminal Server Edition with SP6 or higher**

- MetaFrame 1.8 SP3/FR1+SP3/SP4
- MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/SP2/FR1

❖ **Windows 2000 Server/Advanced Server**

- MetaFrame 1.8 SP3/FR1+SP3/SP4
- MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/SP2/SP3/SP4/FR1/FR2/FR3
- MetaFrame Presentation Server 3.0
- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0

❖ **Windows Server 2003/2003 R2**

- MetaFrame XP 1.0 FR3
- MetaFrame Presentation Server 3.0
- Citrix Presentation Cerver 4.0

Supported Printer Drivers

❖ **When Windows Terminal Service is operating**

- PostScript 3
- RPCS drivers

Note

❒ Some RPCS printer driver functions do not work if Windows Terminal Service is installed.

Limitations

The following limitations apply to the Windows Terminal Service environment. These limitations are built in Windows Terminal Service or MetaFrame.

❖ **Windows Terminal Service**

In an environment where Windows Terminal Service is installed, some printer driver functions are unavailable, even if no Windows Terminal Service functions are used. Use the install mode to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client in an environment where Terminal Service is running on a Windows NT Server 4.0 Terminal Server Edition or Windows 2000 Server family computer. The following are the two methods of installation using the install mode:

① Use **[Add/Remove Programs]** in **[Control Panel]** to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

② Enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

```
CHANGE USER /INSTALL
```

To quit the install mode, enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

```
CHANGE USER /EXECUTE
```

Note

❒ For more information, see Windows Help.

❖ **MetaFrame's [Auto-creating client printers]**

Using **[Auto-creating client printers]**, you can select a logical printer created by copying the client's local printer data to the MetaFrame server. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- The settings for optional equipment will not be stored in the server after the equipment is disconnected. The settings for optional equipment will be restored to its defaults each time the client computer logs on to the server.
- When printing a large number of bitmap images or using the server in a WAN environment over dial-up lines such as ISDN, printing may not be possible or errors may occur, depending on data transfer rates.
- When using MetaFrame XP 1.0 or higher versions, we recommend making settings in **[Client Printer bandwidth]** under **[Citrix Management Console]** according to the environment.

- If a print error occurs on the server and the print job or a printer created in **[Auto-creating client printers]** cannot be deleted, we recommend the following:
  - MetaFrame 1.8 SP3, MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/FR1
    Make settings in **[Delete unfinished print jobs]** in the registry. For details, see the Readme file provided with MetaFrame.
  - MetaFrame XP 1.0 FR2
    Make settings in **[Delete pending print jobs at logout]** under **[Printer Properties Management]** of Citrix Management Console.

❖ **MetaFrame's [Printer driver replication]**

Using **[Printer driver replication]**, you can distribute printer drivers across all servers in a server farm. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work. When Using Windows Terminal Service/MetaFrame

- If the printer drivers are not properly copied, install them directly onto each server.

Copyright Information about Installed Applications

expat

Use of the software installed on this product, including the controller (hereinafter "software") and the expat Version 1.95.2 application software (hereinafter "expat 1.95.2"), is subject to the following conditions:

The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including expat 1.95.2 and the product manufacturer allows the initial developer of expat 1.95.2 to be free from these obligations.

Copyright © 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

and Clark Cooper

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Note

❒ Information on expat 1.95.2 is available at:

❒ http://expat.sourceforge.net/

JPEG LIBRARY

The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

NetBSD

Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at http://www.netbsd.org/.

Copyright © 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

① Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

② Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

③ All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.

④ Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Authors Name List

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by TooLs GmbH.
- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Theo de Raadt.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- The software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley.
- This product includes software developed by Chris Provenzano, the University of California, Berkeley, and contributors.

Samba(Ver 2.2.2-1.1)

Copyright © Andrew Tridgell 1994-1998

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version. This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details. You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.

RSA BSAFE ®

- This product includes RSA BSAFE ® cryptographic or security protocol software from RSA Security Inc.
- RSA is a registered trademark and BSAFE is a registered trademark of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- RSA Security Inc. All rights reserved.

INDEX

A

access, 218
Administrator Mode, 191
Adobe Type Manager, 300
Authentication, 331
Authentication and Managing Users, 331
Auto E-mail Notification, 212
autonet, 219

B

Banner Page, 44
Bidirectional Communication is Disabled, 53
Bitmap Images, 181, 184
Bonjour, 220, 304

C

CAD, 165, 167
CAD application, 151
CALS Files, 151, 152, 183
Canceling a Print Job, 100
Canceling a Print Job, Mac OS, 102
Canceling a Print Job, Windows, 101
CD-ROM, 337
Changing Comments, 206
Changing Names, 206
Changing the Paper Type, 198
Changing the Port Settings for SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, 24
Character Group Commands, 174
Collate, 105, 320
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication, 52
Configuration Page, 126
Configuring the WINS Server, 345
Confirming the Connection Method, 3
Control Panel, iv
Copyright Information, 353
Creating a Desktop Printer Icon, 299

D

Deleting Fonts, 325
Deleting Sample Print Files, 85
DeskTopBinder Lite, 74
devicename, 221
DHCP, 343
dhcp, 222
Dial-up Router, 342
Digitization Commands, 172
diprint, 223
Displaying the Printer Status, 330
Dithering, 321
dns, 224
document defaults, RPCS, 61
domainname, 226
Downloading PostScript Files, 328
Downloading PS Fonts, 324

E

Energy Saver Mode, 203
Error Log, 103
EtherTalk, 301, 305
expat, 353
Extended Character, 170

F

Fan Fold, 110
Fit to Paper, 318
Folding Finisher, 109
Folding Finisher Cautions, 111
Fold Type, 110
Font Manager 2000, 348
Form Feed, 44
ftp, 156, 157
Function Palette, 74

G

General Settings, 159, 161
GL/2 Files, 151, 152, 169
GL/2 Print Settings, 159, 163
GL/2 & TIFF, 159

H

HDI Driver, 152, 156, 165, 167
Help, 155, 168
help, 226
Hold Print, 90, 91, 92, 307
Host Interface, 143
hostname, 227
How to Read This Manual, ii
HP-GL, 169
HP-GL/2, 174
HP-GL/2 Filter Coordinates, 173
HP-RTL, 178

I

IEEE 802.11b, 249
ifconfig, 228
info, 229
Initializing Printer Disk, 326
Input Slot, 319
Installing DeskTopBinder, 7
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000), 40
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - IPP), 18
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000) (Standard TCP/IP), 28
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 2000 - TCP/IP), 16
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me), 39
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows 95/98/Me - IPP), 14
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/ 2003 R2), 41
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/ 2003 R2 - IPP), 22
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/ 2003 R2) (LPR), 35
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/ 2003 R2) (Standard TCP/IP), 30
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver (Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/ 2003 R2 - TCP/IP), 20
Installing the PPD Files, 302
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver, 37
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver (LPR), 32
Installing the RPCS Printer Driver (Standard TCP/IP), 26
IPP, 10, 209, 231
ipp, 230

J

Job Spool, 245
Job Type, 307

L

Label Default Status, 174
Language, 150
Launching the Dialogue Console, 330
Line Attribute, 172
List/Test Print, 126
Local Connection, 6
Locked Print, 86, 87, 89, 307
Locking the Menus, 197
lpr, 156, 231

M

Mac OS, 71, 297, 323
Mac OS X, 302, 323
Mail authentication, 213
Maintenance, 121
Manuals for This Printer, i
Menu Chart, 113
message, 267
MetaFrame, 350
Model-Specific Information, iii

N

Names of Major Options, ii
NetBSD, 354
NetWare, 278
netware, 232
NetWare 3.x, 280, 286
NetWare 4.x, 282, 288
NetWare 5/5.1, 282, 284, 288
NetWare 6/6.5, 282, 284, 288
Network Connection, 3
Network Interface Board configuration, 260

O

On-demand E-mail, 214
On-demand E-mail Notification, 212
Option Settings, 52
Orientation Override, 319

P

PageMaker, 349
Page Setup, 326
Paper Input, 116
Paper Size, 318
Paper Type, 320
Password, 233
PDF Direct Print, 73, 74
PDF Direct Print Properties, 74, 77
PDF Password, 74
Plotter Control Commands, 171
Plotter Information, 172
Plotter Setup Commands, 169
Plotting Basic Characters, 170
Plotting Circles, Ovals, and Multiple Shapes, 169
Plotting Domain, 170
PostScript 3, 63, 65, 67, 69, 307
PostScript 3 Printer Driver, 12, 297
PostScript 3 Printer Driver (NetWare), 44
PPD, 297
Printer configuration, 257
printer driver, 338
Printer Fonts, 325
Printer Information, 254, 258
Printer Properties, 55, 57, 59, 61, 63, 65, 67, 69
Printer Server, 275
Printer Status, 205, 208, 210
Printer Utility for Mac, 322, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 330
Printing after Resetting the Printer, 45
Printing All Print Jobs, 98
Printing a PDF File Directly, 73
Printing Commands, 152, 156, 294
Printing Files Directly from Windows, 291
Printing Font Catalog, 326
Printing Font Sample, 327
Printing GL/2 and TIFF Files, 151
Printing Method, 73
Printing the Selected Print Job, 97
print job, 258
Print Job Function, 79
Print Job Screen, 79
print log, 259
Print Settings, 134
Print Settings for GL/2 & TIFF, 159
prnlog, 234
Pure IP, 284

R

rcp, 156, 157
Renaming the Printer, 327
Rendezvous, 304
Resolution, 319
Restarting the Printer, 328
route, 235
RPCS, 55, 57, 59, 61
RPCS Printer Driver, 8, 10

S

Samba, 356
Sample Print, 82, 85, 307
Screen fonts, 300
Security Options, 138
Selecting the Zone, 328
set, 237
Setting a Password, 204
Setting Spool Printing, 108
Setting Up as a Remote Printer, 280, 282, 284, 286, 288
Setting Up for Printing, 63, 71
Setting Up Options, 299, 303
Setting Up PPD Files, 298
Setting Up the PPD File, Mac OS X, 302
show, 239
slp, 239
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, 193, 196, 197, 198, 199, 203, 204, 205, 206, 207, 339
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, 7, 208, 209, 340
SmartDeviceMonitor Port, 7
smb, 240
SNMP, 253
snmp, 241
sntp, 244
Software and Utilities, 337
Spool Print, 207
Spool Printing, 107
spoolsw, 245
ssdp, 245
ssh, 246
SSL (Secure Sockets Layer), 335
Standard TCP/IP Port, 26
status, 247
Stored Print, 93, 94, 96, 307
Symbols, ii
System, 130
system log, 247, 267

T

TCP/IP, 8, 12
TCP/IP address, 228
telnet, 217
Terminal Service, 350
TIFF/CALS Print Settings, 159, 164
TIFF Files, 151, 152, 179
Toner Saving/Level Color, 320

U

UNIX, 78
upnp, 247
USB Connection, 46
User Code, 318
User ID Screen, 97
User Information, 199
Using as the Windows Network Printer, 37
Using Commands, 78
Using Keys, iv
Using Sample Print, 308
Using Stored Print, 315
Using the Dynamic DNS Function, 346
Using the LPR Port, 32
Using USB Interface, 303

V

Viewing or Deleting Spooled Jobs, 108

W

web, 248
Web Image Monitor, 185
Web Image Monitor Help, 191
Web Printing Tool, 152
Windows 2000, 48, 57, 65
Windows 95/98/Me, 12, 55, 63
Windows Me, 46
Windows NT 4.0, 61, 69
Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, 49, 59, 67
Windows XP, 49, 59, 67
wins, 252

Copyright © 2007

Operating Instructions Software Guide